# Guide d'encodage et représentation des données au sein d'un format pivot XML TEI dans le cadre du projet Lectaurep

## Table des matières


1. Introduction
   1.1. Contexte et problématique
   1.2. Formats des données et des métadonnées du projet Lectaurep
   1.3. XML TEI, format pivot des données pour Lectaurep
2. Template format pivot XML TEI
3. Perspectives et évolutions pour le format pivot TEI
4. Tableau des éléments pour le format pivot TEI
   4.1. Elements
      4.1.1. <TEI>
      4.1.2. <ab>
      4.1.3. <additional>
      4.1.4. <addrLine>
      4.1.5. <address>
      4.1.6. <att>
      4.1.7. <attDef>
      4.1.8. <attList>
      4.1.9. <author>
      4.1.10. <availability>
      4.1.11. <bibl>
      4.1.12. <body>
      4.1.13. <change>
      4.1.14. <classRef>
      4.1.15. <classSpec>
      4.1.16. <country>
      4.1.17. <date>
      4.1.18. <desc>
      4.1.19. 
      4.1.20. <div1>
      4.1.21. <div2>
      4.1.22. <editorialDecl>
      4.1.23. <elementSpec>
      4.1.24. <emph>
      4.1.25. <encodingDesc>
      4.1.26. <facsimile>
      4.1.27. <fileDesc>
      4.1.28. <forename>
      4.1.29. <gi>
      4.1.30. <graphic>
      4.1.31. <head>
      4.1.32. <idno>
      4.1.33. <institution>
      4.1.34. <item>
      4.1.35. <lb>
      4.1.36. <list>
      4.1.37. <locus>
      4.1.38. <material>
      4.1.39. <moduleRef>
      4.1.40. <msContents>
      4.1.41. <msDesc>
      4.1.42. <msIdentifier>
      4.1.43. <msItemStruct>
      4.1.44. <note>
      4.1.45. <orgName>
      4.1.46. <origDate>
      4.1.47. <p>
      4.1.48. <persName>
      4.1.49. <pubPlace>
      4.1.50. <publicationStmt>
      4.1.51. <publisher>
      4.1.52. <ref>
      4.1.53. <repository>
      4.1.54. <resp>
      4.1.55. <respStmt>
      4.1.56. <revisionDesc>
      4.1.57. <schemaSpec>
      4.1.58. <settlement>
      4.1.59. <sourceDesc>
      4.1.60. <summary>
      4.1.61. <surface>
      4.1.62. <surname>
      4.1.63. <surrogates>
      4.1.64. <teiHeader>
      4.1.65. <text>
      4.1.66. <textLang>
      4.1.67. <title>
      4.1.68. <titleStmt>
      4.1.69. <valItem>
      4.1.70. <valList>
      4.1.71. <xenoData>
      4.1.72. <zone>
   4.2. Model classes

4.2.1. model.addrPart
4.2.2. model.addressLike
4.2.3. model.biblLike
4.2.4. model.biblPart
4.2.5. model.common
4.2.6. model.dateLike
4.2.7. model.descLike
4.2.8. model.div1Like
4.2.9. model.div2Like
4.2.10. model.divBottom
4.2.11. model.divLike
4.2.12. model.divPart
4.2.13. model.divTop
4.2.14. model.divTopPart
4.2.15. model.emphLike
4.2.16. model.encodingDescPart
4.2.17. model.global
4.2.18. model.graphicLike
4.2.19. model.headLike
4.2.20. model.highlighted
4.2.21. model.imprintPart
4.2.22. model.inter
4.2.23. model.labelLike
4.2.24. model.limitedPhrase
4.2.25. model.linePart
4.2.26. model.listLike
4.2.27. model.milestoneLike
4.2.28. model.nameLike
4.2.29. model.nameLike.agent
4.2.30. model.noteLike
4.2.31. model.oddDecl
4.2.32. model.oddRef
4.2.33. model.pLike
4.2.34. model.pPart.data
4.2.35. model.pPart.edit
4.2.36. model.pPart.msdesc
4.2.37. model.persNamePart
4.2.38. model.phrase
4.2.39. model.phrase.xml
4.2.40. model.placeNamePart
4.2.41. model.placeStateLike
4.2.42. model.ptrLike
4.2.43. model.publicationStmtPart.agency
4.2.44. model.publicationStmtPart.detail
4.2.45. model.qLike
4.2.46. model.resource
4.2.47. model.respLike
4.2.48. model.teiHeaderPart
4.3. Attribute classes
4.3.1. att.ascribed
4.3.2. att.breaking
4.3.3. att.cReferencing
4.3.4. att.canonical
4.3.5. att.combinable
4.3.6. att.coordinated
4.3.7. att.datable.custom
4.3.8. att.datable.iso
4.3.9. att.datable.w3c
4.3.10. att.declaring
4.3.11. att.deprecated
4.3.12. att.dimensions
4.3.13. att.docStatus
4.3.14. att.editLike
4.3.15. att.edition
4.3.16. att.fragmentable
4.3.17. att.global.change
4.3.18. att.global.facs
4.3.19. att.global.linking
4.3.20. att.global.rendition
4.3.21. att.global.responsibility
4.3.22. att.global.source
4.3.23. att.internetMedia
4.3.24. att.media
4.3.25. att.msClass
4.3.26. att.msExcerpt
4.3.27. att.namespaceable
4.3.28. att.naming
4.3.29. att.placement
4.3.30. att.pointing
4.3.31. att.ranging
4.3.32. att.repeatable
4.3.33. att.resourced
4.3.34. att.sortable
4.3.35. att.spanning
4.3.36. att.translatable
4.3.37. att.written
4.4. Macros

4.4.1. macro.limitedContent
4.4.2. macro.paraContent
4.4.3. macro.phraseSeq
4.4.4. macro.phraseSeq.limited
4.4.5. macro.specialPara
4.5. Datatypes
4.5.1. teidata.certainty
4.5.2. teidata.count
4.5.3. teidata.duration.iso
4.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c
4.5.5. teidata.enumerated
4.5.6. teidata.language
4.5.7. teidata.name
4.5.8. teidata.namespace
4.5.9. teidata.numeric
4.5.10. teidata.pattern
4.5.11. teidata.point
4.5.12. teidata.pointer
4.5.13. teidata.probCert
4.5.14. teidata.probability
4.5.15. teidata.replacement
4.5.16. teidata.temporal.iso
4.5.17. teidata.temporal.w3c
4.5.18. teidata.text
4.5.19. teidata.truthValue
4.5.20. teidata.unboundedInt
4.5.21. teidata.versionNumber
4.5.22. teidata.word
4.5.23. teidata.xTruthValue
4.5.24. teidata.xmlName
4.5.25. teidata.xpath



Author : Lucas Terriel

Reviewers : Laurent Romary, Alix Chagué


Version : 1.1.0

# 1. Introduction

## *1.1. Contexte et problématique*

Nous présentons ici une modélisation et un guide d'encodage, devant servir à l'élaboration d'un format pivot en XML TEI dans le cadre du projet LECTAUREP (Lecture automatique des répertoires de notaires). Le projet LECTAUREP vise à développer une plateforme autour de eScriptorium comme un outil de transcription, de lecture et d'analyse par ordinateur des répertoires de notaires conservés au Minutier central des notaires de Paris aux Archives nationales. Actuellement, le projet compte autant de formats de représentation de données que de systèmes de stockage ou de reconnaissance (Kraken via eScriptorium). Leur seul point commun l'encodage en XML.

## *1.2. Formats des données et des métadonnées du projet Lectaurep*

Ci-après, la liste des fichiers XML et des schémas associés pour les documents issus de la transcription automatique dans Lectaurep :

- Deux types d'Instruments de recherche (« Minutes et répertoires du notaire… » et « Images des répertoires du notaire… ») en XML EAD (Encoded Archival Description) ;
- Deux types de fiches producteur correspondant au notaire et à l'étude en XML EAC-CPF (Encoded Archival Context for Corporate Bodies, Persons, and Families) ;
- Des images, correspondant aux numérisation des répertoires de notaires, contenant des métadonnées techniques au format XML EXIF (Exchangeable image file format);
- Les documents de vérité terrain (*Ground Truth*) contiennent la structure physique et la transcription attendues pour être comparées à celles reconnues par le système, lors d'une phase d'évaluation ultérieure. Ils sont actuellement exportés depuis eScriptorium dans le format XML ALTO (Analysed Layout and Text Object). À noter que ces documents de vérité terrain peuvent être exportées au format XML PAGE (Page Analysis and Ground-Truth Elements). Pour les XML PAGE, datant généralement de l'utilisation de la plateforme Transkribus, on envisagera une conversion vers XML ALTO au moyen d'une feuille de style XSL.

## *1.3. XML TEI, format pivot des données pour Lectaurep*

Face à la diversité des formats présentés ci-dessus, on constate que l'intéropérabilité est quasi-impossible d'une plateforme ou d'un silo d'information à l'autre. On constate également la volonté de conserver une cohérence dans les données, au cours des différentes étapes de reconnaissance (OCR) et des traitements associés dans le projet. Une des solutions proposée consisterai à homogénéiser ces données et/ou métadonnées grâce à l'utilisation d'un unique format pivot XML-TEI. Cela permettrai de représenter tous les modèles de données et de faciliter le transfert et la récupération de ces données (export dans des formats multiples) entre les différents modules et les plateformes de l'éco-système technique LECTAUREP.

La TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) est une communauté académique qui vise à proposer des recommandations pour l'encodage des documents textuels, formalisé dans les Guidelines P5. L'encodage et la modélisation TEI proposé ici est dit « *TEI conformant* », car il vise, à terme l'échange de fichiers, la production de données pérennes, le traitement par des outils « open-source » et partagés par les acteurs du projet et enfin la réalisation d'un modèle documenté via l'ODD (One Document Does it all) présentée ici. L'ODD permet alors la génération d'un schéma de validation (RelaxNG XML, XML Schema, DTD) et une documentation dans différents formats (XHTML, XML, PDF…).

Cette ODD présente une première modélisation expérimentale du format pivot TEI ainsi que la liste des éléments TEI permettant de représenter les différents formats de données utilisés dans LECTAUREP.

# 2. Template format pivot XML TEI

```
<!-- ********************************************************     -->
<!-- Version 1.1.1 / Date : 2020-07-27                            -->
<!--                                                              -->
<!-- La template suivante est développée dans le cadre du projet  -->
<!-- LECTAUREP en lien avec les Archives Nationales/INRIA         -->
<!-- pour envisager un format XML TEI Pivot pour rassembler       -->
<!-- les données  dans une structure logique                      -->
<!-- provenant des schémas suivants (CF. ODD) :                   -->
<!--                                                              -->
<!-- + EAD (Encoded Archival Description)                         -->
<!-- + EAC-CPF (Encoded Archival Context for Corporate Bodies,    -->
<!--   Persons, and Families)                                     -->
<!-- + ALTO (Analysed Layout and Text Object) - structure physique -->
<!--   document de vérité                                         -->
<!-- + EXIF (Exchangeable image file format)                      -->
<!--                                                              -->
<!-- ********************************************************     -->
<!--  Author : Lucas Terriel                                      -->
<!--  Reviewers : Laurent Romary, Alix Chagué                     -->
<!--          Des Questions ?                                     -->
<!-- @Gitlab-INRIA/ALMANACH                                       -->
<!-- ********************************************************     -->
<!--                                                              -->
<!-- ********************************************************     -->
```

```
<!-- Ce script est libre à la réutilisation selon les termes         -->
<!-- de la Creative Commons Attribution license.                     -->
<!-- ************************************************************    -->
<!--                                                                 -->
<!-- Les éléments contenus dans les attributs @ sont ici à titre     -->
<!-- d'exemples                                                      -->
<!-- ************************************************************    --><TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"
  xmlns:exif="http://ns.adobe.com/exif/1.0/">
<!--********************************************************** -->
<!-- LIAISON AVEC INSTRUMENTS DE RECHERCHE EAD &amp;amp; FICHE PRO-    -->
<!-- DUCTEUR EAC                                                -->
<!--********************************************************** -->
 <teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
   <titleStmt>
    <title>Répertoire du notaire
<!-- EAD: <persname> --> -
<!-- EAD: <corpname> -->
    </title>
    <respStmt>
     <persName>
<!-- EAD : <persname> -->
      <forename>
<!-- ** Prénom notaire -->
      </forename>
      <surname>
<!-- ** Nom notaire -->
      </surname>
     </persName>
     <resp>Conversion des instruments de recherche en EAD :

<!-- récupération des noms des fichiers EAD <eadid> -->, des fiches producteurs
          EAC, des fichiers ALTO, et des métadonnées EXIF vers le format pivot TEI

<!-- valeur par défaut -->
     </resp>
    </respStmt>
   </titleStmt>
<!-- PARTIE ADMINISTRATIVE -->
   <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>
     <orgName>Minutier central des notaires parisiens, Archives nationales de France

<!-- valeur par défaut -->
     </orgName>
    </publisher>
    <pubPlace>
     <address>
      <addrLine>11 rue des Quatre-Fils
<!-- valeur par défaut -->
      </addrLine>
      <addrLine>75003 Paris
<!-- valeur par défaut -->
      </addrLine>
      <addrLine>FRANCE
<!-- valeur par défaut -->
      </addrLine>
     </address>
    </pubPlace>
    <availability status="free">
<!-- Voir pour changer le status -->
     <p>Format XML-TEI pivot pour le projet Lectaurep
<!-- valeur par défaut -->
     </p>
<!-- Ajout d'une licence à discuter -->
    </availability>
   </publicationStmt>
<!-- PARTIE CONCERNANT LES SOURCES DE REPERTOIRES -->
  <sourceDesc>
<!-- ** Identification de la localisation des répertoires du notaire -->
   <msDesc xml:id="id_automatique"
    xml:lang="fr">
    <msIdentifier>
     <country>France</country>
     <settlement>Paris</settlement>
     <institution>Archives nationales de France</institution>
     <repository>Minutier central des notaires parisiens</repository>
     <idno type="identifiant">
<!--EAD [Images et répertoires de notaires] : cotes étude MC/RE => <unitid type="cote-de-consultation"> -->
     </idno>
    </msIdentifier>
<!-- ** Description du contenu des répertoires -->
<!-- Rassemble les métadonnées présentes dans EAD [Images et répertoires de notaires] -->
    <msContents>
     <summary>
<!-- premier niveau -->
<!-- EAD : @xml:id correspond à l'identifiant du premier <c> -->
      <list type="Répertoire"
       xml:id="id_repertoire">
       <item>
        <idno>
<!-- EAD : cote du repertoire <unitid type="cote-de-consultation"> -->
        </idno>
        <origDate from="1000" to="1000">
<!-- EAD :  Date du répertoire <unitdate> -->
        </origDate>
        <desc>
<!-- EAD : Description physique du répertoire  <physdesc> -->
        </desc>
        <note>
<!-- EAD : Informations supplémentaires sur le répertoire <scopecontent> -->
        </note>
<!-- deuxième niveau -->
        <list type="Contenu_Répertoire">
<!-- EAD : @xml:id correspond à l'identifiant des <c> inférieurs -->
         <item xml:id="Id_table-listechrono">
          <idno type="pieces">
<!-- EAD : pages recto/verso <unitid> -->
          </idno>
          <title>
<!--  EAD : <unittitle> -->
          </title>
          <material>
<!-- EAD : nombre de feuillets <physdesc>/<extent>-->
          </material>
          <note>
<!-- EAD (optionnel) : informations supplémentaires <scopecontent> -->
          </note>
<!-- On rapporte dans <graphic> ici de l'intervalle des images qui comprend les
                                          les feuillets -->
          <graphic url="DAFANCH96_023MIC08132_L.jpg#DAFANCH96_023MIC08141_L.jpg"/>
         </item>
         <item xml:id="Id_table-listechrono2"/>
<!-- ... -->
        </list>
       </item>
      </list>
     </summary>
     <msItemStruct xml:lang="fr">
      <locus from="MC/RE/XXX"
       to="MC/RE/XXX">
<!-- EAD [Images et répertoires de notaires] : <unitid type="cote-de-consultation"> première et derniere côte des répertoires -->
      </locus>
<!-- ** Authentification du notaire et de l'étude -->
      <author>
<!-- Ici on fait le lien avec la fiche producteur EAC via les attributs @source-->
       <persName source="lien_vers_fiche_EAC_Notaire">
<!-- EAD : <persname> -->
        <forename>
<!-- ** Prénom notaire -->
        </forename>
        <surname>
<!-- ** Nom notaire -->
        </surname>
       </persName>
<!-- *** Affiliation à une étude -->
       <orgName source="lien_vers_fiche_EAC_Etude">
<!-- EAD : <corpname> -->
       </orgName>
```

```
<!-- *** Dates des répertoires == Dates d'exercices du notaire (EAC) -->
        <date when-custom="1875-02-24 / 1875-02-24">
<!-- EAD : <did>/<unitdate> -->
        </date>
       </author>
       <textLang mainLang="fr">français
<!-- valeur par défaut -->
       </textLang>
      </msItemStruct>
     </msContents>
<!-- Ici on gère les genres auxquels sont rattachés les répertoires -->
     <additional>
      <surrogates>
       <bibl source="Référentiel_genreform">
        <title type="genreform"
         xml:id="ID_genreform1">
<!-- EAD : répertoire d'officier public ministériel <controlaccess>/<genreform> -->
        </title>
        <title type="genreform"
         xml:id="ID_genreform2">
<!-- EAD : répertoire <controlaccess>/<genreform> -->
        </title>
       </bibl>
      </surrogates>
     </additional>
    </msDesc>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
<!--*********************************************************   -->
<!-- LIAISON AVEC LES METADONNEES TECHNIQUES DES IMAGES AU FORMAT -->
<!-- EXIF DANS DES ELEMENTS TEI <XenoData>                     -->
<!-- chaque élément <XenoData> reçoit :
                    - @xmlns : espace de nom correspondant au schéma des métadonnées techniques EXIF
                    - @facs : qui permet aux groupe de métadonnées EXIF d'être relier à un fichier
                    image contenu dans @id de <graphic> (voir plus bas)
                    - @n : contient le nom du fichier image avec l'extension de fichier
                    -->
<!--*********************************************************   -->
<!-- Exemple Exif :  -->
  <xenoData facs="#FRAN_0025_0039_L-1"
   n="FRAN_0025_0039_L-1.jpeg">
<!-- @facs : relier à <graphic> -->
   <exif:EXIF>
    <exif:ApertureValue/>
    <exif:ColorSpace/>
<!-- ... -->
   </exif:EXIF>
  </xenoData>
  <xenoData>
<!-- ...  -->
  </xenoData>
  <xenoData>
<!-- ...  -->
  </xenoData>
<!-- Notifications effectuées sur le Format pivot TEI -->
  <encodingDesc>
   <editorialDecl>
    <p>
<!-- en cas de modifications ou spécificités aux format pivot TEI à documenter -->
    </p>
   </editorialDecl>
  </encodingDesc>
  <revisionDesc>
   <change when="2020-05-14">File created</change>
  </revisionDesc>
 </teiHeader>
<!--*********************************************************         -->
<!-- LIAISON AVEC LES FICHIERS XML ALTO (1ere partie : <facsimile>)      -->
<!--
                + <facsimile> : contient les représentations des répertoires de notaires sous la forme d'un ensemble d'images (correspond au <Layout>);
                Puis pour chaque fichiers ALTO :
                + 1 <surface> : correspond à la surface en deux dimensions qui correspond à la page de l'image transcrite (élément ALTO : <Page>)
                - @facs : reçoit l'identifiant de l'élément ci-dessous <graphic>
                + 1 <graphic> : correspond à l'image transcrite
                - @url : lien vers le nom du fichier image
                - @xml:id : reçoit un identifiant nommé tel que name_img...
                + 1 à n <zone> qui correspondent aux éléments ALTO : <PrintSpace> (Rectangle couvrant la zone imprimée d'une page == <surface>) => <TextBlock> (bloc/paragraphe de
                - @type : reprend l'intitulé de la balise ALTO (sauf pour <Shape> qui prend la valeur "Polygon")
                - @xml:id : chaque zone dispose d'un identifiant nommé tel que facPS_name_img => facblock_name_img => facline_name_img_1 => facs_name_img_1
                - @ulx-@uly-@lrx-@lry : coordonnées de la zone concernée dans le XML ALTO (@WIDTH, @HEIGHT, @VPOS et @HPOS)
                - @points : pour <zone type="Polygon"> représente les points du polygones

                -->
<!--*********************************************************          -->
<!-- Exemple Alto (partie 1) :  -->
 <facsimile>
  <surface facs="#FRAN_0025_0039_L-1">
   <graphic url="FRAN_0025_0039_L-1.jpeg"
    xml:id="FRAN_0025_0039_L-1"/>
   <zone type="PrintSpace"
    xml:id="facPS_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1" ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="2972" lry="4356">
    <zone type="TextBlock"
     xml:id="facblock_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1">
     <zone type="TextLine"
      xml:id="facline_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_1" ulx="2575" uly="284" lrx="2830" lry="348">
      <zone type="String"
       xml:id="facs_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_1" ulx="2575" uly="284" lrx="2830" lry="348"/>
      <zone type="Polygon"
       points="2585,217 2588,206 2594,212 2618,207 2626,213 2644,216 2662,208 2675,218
 2700,216 2720,227 2727,220 2744,217 2745,232 2720,228 2710,233 2687,231
 2681,235 2675,227 2653,227 2644,217 2627,217 2607,228 2602,225 2585,229"/>
     </zone>
    </zone>
   </zone>
  </surface>
  <surface>
<!-- ...  -->
  </surface>
  <surface>
<!-- ...  -->
  </surface>
 </facsimile>
<!--*********************************************************          -->
<!-- LIAISON AVEC LES FICHIERS XML ALTO (2eme partie : <body>/<div>)     -->
<!-- Pour chaque fichiers XML ALTO :
                + 1 <div> : correspond à une <surface> (voir plus haut) reçoit :
                - @facs : nom de l'image correspondant à l'id de <graphic> (voir plus haut)
                + 1 <ab> : correspond à un bloc de texte quelconque et correspond à la zone de type "TextBlock" reçoit :
                - @facs : correspond à l'id de la zone de type "TextBlock"
                - @xml_id : un identifiant unique comme block_name_image_1 pour le premier
                + 1 à n <w> : élément vide ou non qui contient des données textuelles et reçoit :
                - @xml:id : un identifiant unique comme w_name_image_1
                - @facs : relie les données textuelles à sa zone de type String via l'identifiant de ce dernier
                + 1 à n <lb> : qui correspond à la zone contenant la ligne de texte (TextLine) et reçoit
                - @xml:id : un identifiant unique noté tel que esc_line_name_image_1 pour le premier
                - @facs : relie la ligne à sa zone de type TextLine via l'identifiant de ce dernier
                -->
<!--*********************************************************          -->
 <text>
  <body>
<!-- Exemple Alto (partie 2) :  -->
   <div type="GT"
    facs="#FRAN_0025_0039_L-1">
    <ab facs="#facblock_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1"
     xml:id="block_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_1">
     <w facs="#facs_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_1"
      xml:id="w_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_1"/>
     <lb facs="#facs_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_1"
      xml:id="esc_line_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_1"/>
     <w facs="#facs_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_2"
      xml:id="w_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_2">Ceci est un
           élément w contenant du texte</w>
     <lb facs="#facline_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_2"
      xml:id="esc_line_FRAN_0025_0039_L-1_2"/>
<!-- ... -->
    </ab>
   </div>
   <div>
<!-- ... -->
```

```
    </div>
    <div>
<!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </body>
 </text>
</TEI>
```

À noter qu'il est possible de visualiser ce format XML-TEI pivot à partir de données réelles issues de Lectaurep (set test Legay) via ce lien. Ce dernier a été généré grâce à un script Python generator_Lectaurep2TEI (@Lucaterre) qui simule un fichier TEI pivot en sortie à partir de fichiers XML EAD-EAC, EXIF, images, ALTO, ou encore Pages via une conversion XSLT vers ALTO. Si les liens échouent, vous devez être connecter préalablement sinon se rendre sur le Gitlab@InriaAlamanach.

# 3. Perspectives et évolutions pour le format pivot TEI

Cette version du format pivot TEI constituant un premier essai de représentation, qui ne pourrai composé une version stable, un certains nombre de points sont encore a discuter et susceptibles d'évoluer par la suite :

- Distinguer et fixer clairement un format (XML PAGE ou XML ALTO) correspondant aux documents de vérité terrain et aux documents issus de l'OCR (actuellement, on trouve ces documents de vérité terrain en XML PAGE, XML ALTO, et en texte brut, ce que l'on peut confirmer en se référant au stockage mis en place sur ShareDocs);
- Modéliser au sein de la template TEI, l'accueil des futures structures logiques des transcriptions issues du système de transcription automatique (eScriptorium), afin de mettre les mettre en vis-à-vis du document de vérité terrain. Actuellement seul le document de vérité terrain est rapporté dans la template TEI présentée ici (Sinon Cf. piste METS évoquée plus bas). On peut utiliser un @type sur <surface> de la partie <facsimile> et sur la  de la partie <body> pour distinguer le document de vérité tel que :

  ```
  <surface type="GT">
  <!-- ... -->
  </surface>
  ou
  <div type="GT">
  <!-- ... -->
  </div>
  ```

  et la transcription issu d'un système OCR tel que :

  ```
  <surface type="OCR">
  <!-- ... -->
  </surface>
  ou
  <div type="OCR">
  <!-- ... -->
  </div>
  ```

  ;
- Réfléchir et modéliser en XML-TEI un référentiel de mains génériques correspondant aux classes de graphies repérées dans les répertoires de notaires; Il est également possible de modéliser ce référentiel basé sur les éléments <msDesc> et <physDesc> dans des éléments <handDesc> avec des éléments concernant la police, la date... tel que (ceci n'est qu'une illustration)

  ```
  <msDesc>
  <physDesc>
       <handDesc hands="1" when="1800">
  <p>Main typique du tout début XIXe</p>
  </handDesc>
       <handDesc hands="2"
          when="1841">
  <p>Main Barthélemy Cahouet 1841 plus cursive</p>
  </handDesc>
  <handDesc hands="3"
      when="1830">
  <p>Main petite et régulière de Didier Nicolas Rians 1830</p>
  </handDesc>
  <handDesc hands="4"
      when="1800">
        <p>calligraphie Fraktur</p>
  </handDesc>
  <handDesc hands="5"
      when="1879">
  <p>Main Jean Dufour 1879 lisible et moderne</p>
  </handDesc>
  </physDesc>
  </msDesc>
  ```

  et de proposer une ODD spécifique à ce référentiel intéropérable avec le format pivot TEI ;
- Une fois le référentiel de mains abouti (point précédant), modéliser et réfléchir à la manière d'insérer les métadonnées issues du dit référentiel des mains dans le format pivot XML TEI, en fonction des types de mains repérés dans les documents de chaque notaire;
- Restreindre et adapter les modules de la TEI en fonction des cas rencontrés, et de l'avancement du format pivot TEI dans l'ODD ci-présente. L'objectif étant de proposer un schéma RelaxNG de validation propre au format pivot XML TEI de LECTAUREP. Actuellement le format pivot TEI présenté ici, est valide au regard d'un schéma RelaxNG XML TEI-ALL;
- Proposer une représentation plus fine, via les éléments TEI ou ALTO, de la structure logique du document de vérité et de la transcription issue du système OCR. On pourra s'appuyer sur le travail de repérage des colonnes mené dans le *Rapport exploratoire. Répertoire de Notaires parisiens. Segmentation automatique et reconnaissance d'écriture* par Marie-Laurence Bonhomme pour définir des @type sur les éléments <zone> pour évaluer les différentes colonnes;
- Réfléchir à l'opportunité de connecter ALTO (structure physique de la transcription issue de l'OCR), images (Jpeg, Jpg) et TEI (structure logique contenant les métadonnées EAD-EAC et EXIF et le document de vérité terrain) par l'intermédiaire d'un fichier METS (Metadata Encoding and Transmission Standard). « La génération d'un fichier METS est automatique et elle est un simple transcodage des liens trouvés par le système de reconnaissance dans un fichier XML mettant en correspondance les ID d'un fichier avec les ID d'un autre » (extrait de l'article Belaïd A., Falk I., Rangoni Y., *Représentation des données en XML pour l'analyse d'images de documents*, LORIA-CNRS-ATILF, Juillet 2007)

# 4. Tableau des éléments pour le format pivot TEI

## 4.1. Elements

### *4.1.1. <TEI>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the **model.resource** class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combine Text] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, ( @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |

| | |
|---|---|
| **May contain** | **header:** teiHeader<br>**textstructure:** TEI text<br>**transcr:** facsimile |
| **Note** | This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace `http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0` on it, using the @xmlns attribute. |

**Example**

```
<TEI version="3.3.0"
                                        xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> <teiHeader> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>The shortest TEI
Document Imaginable</title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>First published as part
of TEI P2, this is the P5 version using a name
space.</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <p>No source: this is an
original work.</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc> </teiHeader> <text> <body> <p>This is about the
shortest TEI document imaginable.</p> </body> </text>
</TEI>
```

**Example**

```
<TEI version="2.9.1"
                                        xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> <teiHeader> <fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>A TEI Document
containing four page images </title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>Unpublished
demonstration file.</p>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
<p>No source:
this is an original work.</p> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc> </teiHeader> <facsimile> <graphic url="page1.png"/> <grap
</TEI>
```

**Schematron**

```
<sch:ns prefix="tei"
                                    uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>
<sch:ns prefix="xs"
                                    uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>
```

**Schematron**

```
<sch:ns prefix="rng"
                                    uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.resource"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element TEI
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resource+, TEI* ) | TEI+ ) )
}
```

## *4.1.2. <ab>*

**<ab>** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | linking |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@part** specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.<br>**Derived from** att.fragmentable<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **N** **[Default]** |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note<br>**header:** availability change editorialDecl encodingDesc publicationStmt sourceDesc<br>**msdescription:** msContents msDesc msItemStruct summary surrogates<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined. |
| **Example** | `<div type="book" n="Genesis">`<br>`<div type="chapter" n="1"> <ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</ab> <ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</ab> <ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</ab>`<br>`<!-- ...--> </div>`<br>`</div>` |
| **Schematron** | `<s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum \|parent::tei:item \|parent::tei:note \|parent::tei:q \|parent::tei:quote \|parent::tei:remarks \|parent::tei:said \|parent::tei:sp \|parent::tei:stage \|parent::tei:cell \|parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: ab may not occur inside paragraphs or other ab elements. </s:report>` |
| **Schematron** | `<s:report test="ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg">`<br>`Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab. </s:report>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>`<br>`</content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | element ab<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.facs.attribute.facs,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.declaring.attributes,<br>att.written.attributes,<br>attribute part { "N" }?,<br>macro.paraContent<br>} |

## 4.1.3. <additional>

| | |
|---|---|
| **<additional>** groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript or other object, or surrogate copies of it, with curatorial or administrative information. [10.9. Additional Information] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **msdescription:** surrogates |
| **Example** | <additional> <adminInfo> <recordHist> <br><!-- record history here<br>--> <br></recordHist><br><custodialHist><br> <br><!-- custodial history here<br>--> <br></custodialHist><br></adminInfo> <surrogates> <br><!-- information about surrogates here -->  </surrogates> <listBibl> <bibl><br><!-- ... --> </bibl><br><!-- full bibliography here<br>--> </listBibl><br></additional> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="adminInfo" minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="surrogates"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="listBibl" minOccurs="0"/><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element additional<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>( adminInfo?, surrogates?, listBibl? )<br>} |

## 4.1.4. <addrLine>

| | |
|---|---|
| **<addrLine>** (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information] | |
| **Module** | core |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.addrPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** address |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the **model.addrPart** class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text. |
| **Example** | `<address> <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine> <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine> <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine> <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine> </address>` |
| **Example** | `<addrLine> <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref> </addrLine>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element addrLine { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, macro.phraseSeq } ` |

## *4.1.5. <address>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<address>** contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Docume | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @ att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change publicationStmt<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** addrLine lb note<br>**header:** idno<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **Note** | This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from |
| **Example** | Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:<br>`<address> <street>via Marsala 24</street> <postCode>40126</postCode> <name>Bologna</name> <name>Italy</name> </address>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic <name>:<br>`<address> <street>via Marsala 24</street> <postCode>40126</postCode> <settlement>Bologna</settlement> <country>Italy</country> </address>` |
| **Example** | `<address> <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine> <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine> <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine> <addrLine>USA</addrLine> </address>` |
| **Example** | `<address> <country key="FR"/> <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement> <postCode>69002</postCode> <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district> <district ty Verdun</street> </address>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.addrPart"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </sequence> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element address { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, ( model.global*, ( model.addrPart, model.global* )+ ) }` |

## 4.1.6. <att>

**<att>** (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text. [22. Documentation Elements]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @ att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.phrase.xml |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | As an alternative to using the@scheme attribute a namespace prefix may be used. Where both @scheme and a prefix are used, the prefix takes precedence. |
| **Example** | `<p>The TEI defines several <soCalled>global</soCalled> attributes; their names include <att>xml:id</att>, <att>rend</att>, <att>xml:lang</att>, <att>n</att>, <att>xml:space</att>, and <att>xml` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <dataRef key="teidata.name"/> </content>` |

**Schema Declaration**

```
element att
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   teidata.name
}
```

## 4.1.7. <attDef>

**<attDef>** (attribute definition) contains the definition of a single attribute. [22.5.3. Attribute List Specification]

**Module** tagdocs

**Attributes** Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @ att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.identified (@ident) att.deprecated (@validUntil)

**@mode** specifies the effect of this declaration on its parent object.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.combinable |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **change**<br>**delete** |

**Contained by** **tagdocs:** attList

**May contain** **core:** desc
**tagdocs:** valList

**Example**

```
<attDef usage="rec" ident="type">  <desc>specifies a name conventionally used
                                   for this level of subdivision, e.g.  <val>act</val>, <val>volume</val>, <val>book</val>, <val>section</val>, <val>canto</val
                                   </attDef>
```

**Schematron**

```
<s:ns prefix="teix"
                                    uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples"/>
                                   <s:assert test="ancestor::teix:egXML[@valid='feasible']
                                   or @mode eq 'change' or @mode eq 'delete' or tei:datatype or
                                   tei:valList[@type='closed']">Attribute: the definition of
                                   the @<s:value-of select="@ident"/> attribute in the
                                   <s:value-of select="ancestor::*[@ident][1]/@ident"/>
                                   <s:value-of select="' '"/>
                                   <s:value-of select="local-name(ancestor::*[@ident][1])"/>
                                   should have a closed valList or a
                                   datatype</s:assert>
```

**Schematron**

```
                                   <sch:rule context="tei:attDef[@usage eq 'req']">
                                   <sch:report test="tei:defaultVal">It does not make
                                   sense to make
                                   "<sch:value-of select="normalize-space(tei:defaultVal)"/>"
                                   the default value of @<sch:value-of select="@ident"/>,
                                   because that attribute is required.</sch:report>
                                   </sch:rule>
```

**Schematron**

```
                                   <sch:rule context="tei:attDef[ tei:defaultVal and
                                   tei:valList[@type eq 'closed'] and tei:datatype[ @maxOccurs
                                   > 1 or @minOccurs > 1 or @maxOccurs = 'unbounded' ]
                                   ]"> <sch:assert test="
                                   tokenize(normalize-space(tei:defaultVal),' ') =
                                   tei:valList/tei:valItem/@ident">In the
                                   <sch:value-of select="local-name(ancestor::*[@ident][1])"/>
                                   defining
                                   <sch:value-of select="ancestor::*[@ident][1]/@ident"/>
                                   the default value of the
                                   @<sch:value-of select="@ident"/> attribute is not
                                   among the closed list of possible values</sch:assert>
                                   </sch:rule>
```

**Schematron**

```
<sch:rule context="tei:attDef[ tei:defaultVal and
tei:valList[@type eq 'closed'] and tei:datatype[
not(@maxOccurs) or ( if ( @maxOccurs castable as xs:integer
) then ( @maxOccurs cast as xs:integer eq 1 ) else false()
)] ]"> <sch:assert test="string(tei:defaultVal) =
tei:valList/tei:valItem/@ident">In the
<sch:value-of select="local-name(ancestor::*[@ident][1])"/>
defining
<sch:value-of select="ancestor::*[@ident][1]/@ident"/>
the default value of the
@<sch:value-of select="@ident"/> attribute is not
among the closed list of possible values</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="datatype" minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="constraintSpec"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="defaultVal"
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="valList"/>
   <elementRef key="valDesc" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="exemplum" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="remarks" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element attDef
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.identified.attribute.ident,
   att.deprecated.attribute.validUntil,
   attribute mode { "change" | "delete" }?,
   (
      ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*,
      datatype?,
      constraintSpec*,
      defaultVal?,
      ( valList | valDesc+ )?,
      exemplum*,
      remarks*
   )
}
```

## 4.1.8. <attList>

**<attList>** contains documentation for all the attributes associated with this element, as a series of <attDef> elements. [22.5. Element Specifications 22.6. Class Specifications]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @ att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **tagdocs:** attList classSpec elementSpec |
| **May contain** | **tagdocs:** attDef attList |
| **Example** | `<attList> <attDef ident="type" usage="opt"> <desc>type of schema</desc> <datatype> <dataRef key="teidata.enumerated"/> </datatype> </attDef> </attList>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | <attList org="choice"> <attDef ident="active"> <desc versionDate="2005-07-24" xml:lang="en">identifies the <soCalled>active</soCalled> participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one.</desc><br><datatype maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><dataRef key="teidata.pointer"/> </datatype> </attDef> <attDef ident="mutual" usage="opt"> <desc versionDate="20 participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds equally.</desc><br><datatype maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><dataRef key="teidata.pointer"/> </datatype> </attDef><br></attList> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="attRef"/><br><elementRef key="attDef"/><br><elementRef key="attList"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element attList<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>( attRef \| attDef \| attList )+<br>} |

## 4.1.9. <author>

**<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl<br>**header:** titleStmt<br>**msdescription:** msItemStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes @key or @ref may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.<br>In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.<br>Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given. |
| **Example** | <author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author><br><author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634-1693)</author><br><author>Anonymous</author><br><author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author><br><author> <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and <persName>John Fletcher</persName> </author><br><author> <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network </author> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element author
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.naming.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## *4.1.10. <availability>*

**<availability>** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.<br>**Derived from** att.declarable<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.truthValue<br>**Legal values are:** **false** **[Default]**<br>**@status** supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **free** |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl<br>**header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** p<br>**linking:** ab |
| **Note** | A consistent format should be adopted |
| **Example** | |

```
<availability status="restricted">  <p>Available for academic
                                    research purposes only.</p>
                                    </availability>
                                    <availability status="free">
                                         <p>In the public
                                        domain</p>
                                    </availability>
                                    <availability status="restricted">
                                         <p>Available under
                                    licence from the publishers.</p>
                                    </availability>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | |

```
<availability>  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
                                          <p>The MIT License
                                         applies to this document.</p>   <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of
                                        Victoria</p>   <p>Permission is hereby
                                    granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy
                                    of this software and associated documentation files (the
                                    "Software"), to deal      in the Software without
                                    restriction, including without limitation the rights      to
                                    use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense,
                                    and/or sell      copies of the Software, and to permit
                                    persons to whom the Software is      furnished to do so,
                                    subject to the following conditions:</p>   <p>The above copyright notice and this
                                    permission notice shall be included in      all copies or
                                    substantial portions of the Software.</p>   <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS",
                                    WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR      IMPLIED,
                                    INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF
                                    MERCHANTABILITY,      FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND
                                    NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE      AUTHORS OR
                                    COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER
                                         LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR
                                    OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,      OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH
                                    THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN      THE
                                        SOFTWARE.</p>  </licence>
                                    </availability>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/><br><classRef key="model.pLike"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element availability<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>attribute default { "false" }?,<br>attribute status { "free" }?,<br>( model.availabilityPart \| model.pLike )+<br>} |

## *4.1.11. <bibl>*

**<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic Refere

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linl<br>**@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.<br>**Derived from** att.declarable<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.truthValue<br>**Legal values are:** **false** **[Default]** |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl desc emph head item note p ref title<br>**header:** change sourceDesc<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** msItemStruct summary surrogates<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 |
| **May contain** | **core:** address author bibl date emph lb note pubPlace publisher ref respStmt textLang title<br>**header:** availability idno<br>**msdescription:** msIdentifier<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>character data |
| **Note** | Contains *phrase-level* elements, together with any combination of elements from the **model.biblPart** class |
| **Example** | <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist<br>Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | <bibl> <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>. <publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date>. </bibl> |
| **Example** | <bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter" xml:id="carlin_2003"> <author> <name> <surname>Carlin</surname> (<forename>Claire</forename>)</name> </author> last congrès</title> dans <bibl type="monogr"> <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W. Tobin</title>, éd. <editor> <name> <forename>Claire</forename> <surname>Carlin</surname> </name> Press</publisher>, <date when="2003">2003</date>. </bibl> </bibl> |
| **Content model** | <content> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <textNode/> <classRef key="model.gLike"/> <classRef key="model.highlighted"/> <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/> <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/> <classRef key="model.segLike"/> <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/> <classRef key="model.biblPart"/> <classRef key="model.global"/> </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element bibl { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.global.source.attribute.source, att.sortable.attributes, att.docStatus.attributes, attribute default { "false" }?, ( text \| model.gLike \| model.highlighted \| model.pPart.data \| model.pPart.edit \| model.segLike \| model.ptrLike \| model.biblPart \| model.global )* } |

## *4.1.12. <body>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head lb list note p<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**tagdocs:** classSpec elementSpec schemaSpec<br>**textstructure:** div div1 |
| **Example** | <body> <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l> <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l> <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l> <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l> <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l> <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l> <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l> <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l> <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l> <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer> </body> |

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.common"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.global"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.global"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element body
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
      ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
      (
         ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
       | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
       | (
            ( model.common, model.global* )+,
            (
               ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
             | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
            )?
         )
      ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

## *4.1.13. <change>*

**<change>** documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Id

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.docStatus (@status) att.datable.w3c (from, to, @when) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.global (@ @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** revisionDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note p ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi schemaSpec<br>character data |
| **Note** | The @who attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible<br>It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The @status attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented. |
| **Example** | `<titleStmt> <title> ... </title> <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor> <respStmt xml:id="BZ"> <resp>copy editing</resp> <name>Brett Zamir</name> </respS`<br>`</titleStmt>`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>`<revisionDesc status="published">`<br>`<change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02" status="public">Finished chapter 23</change> <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02"`<br>`3</change> <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>`<br>`</revisionDesc>` |
| **Example** | `<profileDesc> <creation> <listChange> <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change> <change xml:id="DRAFT2" notBefore="1880-12-09">First revis`<br>`using green ink</change> <change xml:id="DRAFT3" notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as`<br>`supplied to printer.</change> </listChange> </creation>`<br>`</profileDesc>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element change`<br>`{`<br>`att.ascribed.attributes,`<br>`att.datable.w3c.attribute.when,`<br>`att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,`<br>`att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,`<br>`att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,`<br>`att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,`<br>`att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,`<br>`att.docStatus.attributes,`<br>`att.global.attribute.xmlid,`<br>`att.global.attribute.n,`<br>`att.global.attribute.xmllang,`<br>`att.global.attribute.xmlbase,`<br>`att.global.attribute.xmlspace,`<br>`att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,`<br>`att.global.rendition.attribute.style,`<br>`att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,`<br>`att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,`<br>`att.global.linking.attribute.synch,`<br>`att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,`<br>`att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,`<br>`att.global.linking.attribute.next,`<br>`att.global.linking.attribute.prev,`<br>`att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,`<br>`att.global.linking.attribute.select,`<br>`att.global.change.attribute.change,`<br>`att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,`<br>`att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,`<br>`macro.specialPara`<br>`}` |

## *4.1.14. <classRef>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<classRef>** points to the specification for an attribute or model class which is to be included in a schema [22.6. Class Specifications] | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.repeatable (@minOccurs, @maxOccurs) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@include** **Status** Optional<br>**@except** **Status** Optional<br>**@key** the identifier used for the required class within the source indicated.<br>**Status** **Required**<br>**Datatype** teidata.xmlName |
| **Member of** | model.oddRef |
| **Contained by** | **tagdocs:** schemaSpec |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | Attribute and model classes are identified by the name supplied as value for the @ident attribute on the <classSpec> element in which they are declared. All TEI class names are unique; attribute class names conventionally begin with the letters att.. |
| **Example** | <schemaSpec ident="myTEIe" start="TEI"> <moduleRef key="tei"/> <moduleRef key="core" include="abbr add core addrLine address author bibl biblScope choice cit corr date del desc divGen editor emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic head hi index item l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem resp respStmt rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage teiCorpus term time title unclear"/> <moduleRef key="header" include="authority availability catRef category change classCode classDecl creation distributor edition editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc extent fileDesc funder idno keywords langUsage language licence notesStmt principal profileDesc projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl revisionDesc samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc sponsor taxonomy teiHeader textClass titleStmt"/> <moduleRef key="textstructure" include="TEI argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer"/> <classRef key="att.global.facs"/> </schemaSpec> |
| **Content model** | <content> <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element classRef { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.repeatable.attributes, ( attribute include { text }? \| attribute except { text }? ), attribute key { text }, empty } |

## *4.1.15. <classSpec>*

**<classSpec>** (class specification) contains reference information for a TEI element class; that is a group of elements which appear together in content models, or which share some common attribute, both. [22.3. Specification Elements 22.6. Class Specifications]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @ @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.identified (@ident) att.deprecated (@validUntil)<br>**@mode** specifies the effect of this declaration on its parent object.<br>**Derived from** att.combinable<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **change**<br>**@type** indicates whether this is a model class or an attribute class<br>**Derived from** att.typed<br>**Status** **Required**<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **atts** |
| **Member of** | model.oddDecl |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc emph head item note p ref title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** summary surrogates<br>**tagdocs:** schemaSpec<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc<br>**tagdocs:** attList |
| **Example** | `<classSpec module="tei" type="model" ident="model.segLike"> <desc>groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation.</desc> <classes> <memberOf key="model.phrase"/> </classes> <remarks> <p>The principles on w segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <gi>segmentation</gi> element of the <gi>encodingDesc</gi> within the associated TEI header.</p> </remarks> </classSpec>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"> <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.glossLike"/> <classRef key="model.descLike"/> </alternate> <elementRef key="classes" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="constraintSpec" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="attList" minOccurs="0"/> <elementRef key="exemplum" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="remarks" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <elementRef key="listRef" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element classSpec
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.identified.attribute.ident,
   att.deprecated.attribute.validUntil,
   attribute mode { "change" }?,
   attribute type { "atts" },
   (
      ( model.glossLike | model.descLike )*,
      classes?,
      constraintSpec*,
      attList?,
      exemplum*,
      remarks*,
      listRef*
   )
}
```

## *4.1.16. <country>*

**<country>** contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine address author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material msIdentifier origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166. |
| **Example** | `<country key="DK">Denmark</country>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | element country<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.naming.attributes,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

## *4.1.17. <date>*

**<date>** contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.3.7. Dates and Times]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.editLike (@instant) att.dimensions (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom) |
| **Member of** | model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change publicationStmt<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>` |
| **Example** | `Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>` |
| **Example** | `<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`<textNode/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.gLike"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.phrase"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.global"/>`<br>`</alternate>`<br>`</content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element date
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,
   att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

## *4.1.18. <desc>*

**<desc>** (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, typically a documentation element or an entity. [22.4.1. Description of Components]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.translatable (@versionDate) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.descLike model.labelLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc emph graphic head item list note p ref title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** summary surrogates<br>**tagdocs:** attDef classSpec elementSpec schemaSpec valItem<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2<br>**transcr:** surface |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph list ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | When used in a specification element such as <elementSpec>, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb. |
| **Example** | **<desc>**contains a brief description of the purpose and intended use of a documentation element, or a brief characterisation of a parent entity **</desc>** |
| **Schematron** | A <desc> with a @type of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when <desc> is a valid child of that element. |

```
<sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq
'deprecationInfo']">
<sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Information about a
deprecation should only be present in a specification
element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element
that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child
<desc type="deprecationInfo">.</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | |

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

| Schema Declaration | |
|---|---|

```
element desc
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.translatable.attributes,
   macro.limitedContent
}
```

## *4.1.19. *

** ** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]

| Module | textstructure |
|---|---|

**Attributes**

Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@ @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

**@org** (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.divLike |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **uniform**<br>**[Default]** |

**@sample** indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.divLike |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **complete**<br>**[Default]** |

**@part** specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided bet stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.fragmentable |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **N**<br>**[Default]** |

**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.typed |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **GT**<br>**OCR** |

| Member of | model.divLike |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** body div |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head lb list note p<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**tagdocs:** classSpec elementSpec schemaSpec<br>**textstructure:** div |
| **Example** | |

```
<body>  <div type="part">
                                        <head>Fallacies of
                                    Authority</head>
                                        <p>The subject of
                                which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to
                                repress all      exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>   <div n="1" type="chapter">    <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
                                proposed measures having for their object the greatest
                                       happiness of the greatest number [...]</p>    <div n="1.1" type="section">     <head>Analysis of
                                    Authority</head>
                                        <p>What on any
                                given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be
                                attached to          authority [...] </p>    </div>    <div n="1.2" type="section">
                                        <head>Appeal to
                                Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>     <p>Reference to authority is open to the
                                charge of fallacy when [...] </p>    </div>   </div>  </div>
                                </body>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schematron** | |

```
                                <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l"> Abstract model
                                violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural
                                elements such as div. </s:report>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schematron** | |

```
                                <s:report test="ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and
                                not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model
                                violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural
                                elements such as div. </s:report>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
     </alternate>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="1">
       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element div
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   attribute org { "uniform" }?,
   attribute sample { "complete" }?,
   attribute part { "N" }?,
   attribute type { "GT" | "OCR" }?,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
          | (
               ( model.common, model.global* )+,
               ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
            )
         ),
         ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
      )?
   )
}
```

## *4.1.20. <div1>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<div1>** (level-1 text division) contains a first-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **evolutions** **introduction** **template_pivot_tei** |
| **Member of** | model.div1Like |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head lb list note p<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**tagdocs:** classSpec elementSpec schemaSpec<br>**textstructure:** div2 |
| **Note** | any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions. |
| **Example** | |

```
<div1 xml:id="levi" n="I" type="part">
                                        <head>Part I: Of Man
                                       </head>  <div2 xml:id="levi1" n="1" type="chapter">  <head>Chap. I. Of Sense </head>  <p>Concerning the Thoughts
of man... </p>  </div2>
</div1>
<div1 xml:id="levii" n="II" type="part">  <head>Part II: Of Common-Wealth</head>
</div1>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.div2Like"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
     </alternate>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="1">
       <classRef key="model.div2Like"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element div1
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   attribute type { "evolutions" | "introduction" | "template_pivot_tei" }?,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            ( ( model.div2Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
          | (
               ( model.common, model.global* )+,
               ( ( model.div2Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
            )
         ),
         ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
      )?
   )
}
```

## *4.1.21. <div2>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<div2>** (level-2 text division) contains a second-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @ @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from** att.typed<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **context** **data_presentation** **solutions** |
| **Member of** | model.div2Like |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** div1 |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl desc head lb list note p<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**tagdocs:** classSpec elementSpec schemaSpec |
| **Note** | any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions. |
| **Example** | `<div1 n="2" type="part">`<br>`<head>`The Second Partition: The Cure of Melancholy`</head>` `<div2 n="2.1" type="section">`<br>`<div3 n="2.1.1" type="member">` `<div4 n="2.1.1.1" type="subsection">`<br>`<head>`Unlawful Cures rejected.`</head>`<br>`<p>`Inveterate melancholy, howsoever it may seem to be a continuate, inexorable disease, hard to be cured, accompanying them to their graves most part (as `<ref target="#a">`Montanus`</ref>` observes), yet many times it may be helped... `</p>` `</div4>` `</div3>` `</div2>` `<div2 n="2.2" type="section">`<br>`<div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">` `<head>`Sect. II. Memb. I`</head>` `<p/>` `</div3>` `</div2>` `<div2 n="2.3" type="sectio`<br>`<head>`Sect. III. Memb. I`</head>` `<p/>` `</div3>` `</div2>`<br>`</div1>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`<br>`<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`<classRef key="model.divTop"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.global"/>`<br>`</alternate>`<br>`<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">`<br>`<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`<br>`<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`<br>`<classRef key="model.div3Like"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>`<br>`</alternate>`<br>`<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`</sequence>`<br>`<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`<br>`<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`<classRef key="model.common"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`</sequence>`<br>`<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">`<br>`<classRef key="model.div3Like"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>`<br>`</alternate>`<br>`<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`</sequence>`<br>`</sequence>`<br>`</alternate>`<br>`<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">`<br>`<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>`<br>`<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>`<br>`</sequence>`<br>`</sequence>`<br>`</sequence>`<br>`</content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element div2
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   attribute type { "context" | "data_presentation" | "solutions" }?,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
      (
         (
            ( ( model.div3Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+
          | (
               ( model.common, model.global* )+,
               ( ( model.div3Like | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
            )
         ),
         ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
      )?
   )
}
```

## *4.1.22. <editorialDecl>*

**<editorialDecl>** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.<br>**Derived from:** att.declarable<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.truthValue<br>**Legal values are:** **false [Default]** |
| **Member of** | model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** encodingDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p<br>**linking:** ab |
| **Example** | `<editorialDecl> <normalization> <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary </p> </normalization> <quotation marks="all"> <p>All opening quotation marks converted to “ all closing quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p> </quotation> </editorialDecl>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.pLike"/> <classRef key="model.editorialDeclPart"/> </alternate> </content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | element editorialDecl<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>attribute default { "false" }?,<br>( model.pLike \| model.editorialDeclPart )+<br>} |

## *4.1.23. <elementSpec>*

**<elementSpec>** (element specification) documents the structure, content, and purpose of a single element type. [22.5. Element Specifications 22. Documentation Elements]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.namespaceable (@ns) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @syn |

**@mode** specifies the effect of this declaration on its parent object.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.combinable |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **change** |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Member of** | model.oddDecl |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc emph head item note p ref title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** summary surrogates<br>**tagdocs:** schemaSpec<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc<br>**tagdocs:** attList valList |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | <elementSpec module="tagdocs" ident="code"> <gloss/> <desc>contains literal code</desc> <classes> <memberOf key="model.emphLike"/> </classes> <content> <t<br></elementSpec> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.glossLike"/><br><classRef key="model.descLike"/><br></alternate><br><elementRef key="classes" minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="content" minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="valList" minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="constraintSpec"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><elementRef key="attList" minOccurs="0"/><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="model"/><br><elementRef key="modelGrp"/><br><elementRef key="modelSequence"/><br></alternate><br><elementRef key="exemplum" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><elementRef key="remarks" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><elementRef key="listRef" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element elementSpec<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.identified.attribute.ident,<br>att.deprecated.attribute.validUntil,<br>att.namespaceable.attributes,<br>attribute mode { "change" }?,<br>(<br>( model.glossLike \| model.descLike )*,<br>classes?,<br>content?,<br>valList?,<br>constraintSpec*,<br>attList?,<br>( model \| modelGrp \| modelSequence )*,<br>exemplum*,<br>remarks*,<br>listRef*<br>)<br>} |

## *4.1.24. <emph>*

**<emph>** (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | You took the car and did **<emph>**what**</emph>**?!! |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | <q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said. <q> <emph>What does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph> </q> |
| **Content model** | <content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element emph { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, macro.paraContent } |

## 4.1.25. <encodingDesc>

**<encodingDesc>** (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.teiHeaderPart |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** p<br>**header:** editorialDecl<br>**linking:** ab<br>**tagdocs:** schemaSpec |
| **Example** | <encodingDesc> Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No formatting or layout information preserved. </encodingDesc> |
| **Content model** | <content> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/> <classRef key="model.pLike"/> </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element encodingDesc { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, ( model.encodingDescPart \| model.pLike )+ } |

## 4.1.26. <facsimile>

**<facsimile>** contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | transcr |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @ @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.resource |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **core:** graphic<br>**transcr:** surface |
| **Example** | `<facsimile> <graphic url="page1.png"/> <surface> <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/> <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/> </surface> <graphic url="page3.png"/> </facsimile>` |
| **Example** | `<facsimile> <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300"> <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/> </surface> </facsimile>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"> <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/> <elementRef key="surface"/> <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/> </alternate> <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/> </sequence> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element facsimile { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.declaring.attributes, ( front?, ( model.graphicLike \| surface \| surfaceGrp )+, back? ) }` |

## *4.1.27. <fileDesc>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** publicationStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Note** | The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived. |
| **Example** | `<fileDesc> <titleStmt> <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title> </titleStmt> <publicationStmt> <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p> </publicationStmt> <sourceDesc> <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="titleStmt"/><br><elementRef key="editionStmt"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="publicationStmt"/><br><elementRef key="seriesStmt"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="notesStmt"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br></sequence><br><elementRef key="sourceDesc"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fileDesc<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>(<br>(<br>titleStmt,<br>editionStmt?,<br>extent?,<br>publicationStmt,<br>seriesStmt?,<br>notesStmt?<br>),<br>sourceDesc+<br>)<br>} |

## *4.1.28. <forename>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<forename>** contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.canonical (@key, @ref)<br>**@full** indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.<br>**Derived from** att.personal<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **yes** **[Default]** |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine address author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | <persName> <roleName>Ex-President</roleName> <forename>George</forename> <surname>Bush</surname> </persName> |
| **Content model** | <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element forename { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.canonical.attribute.key, att.canonical.attribute.ref, attribute full { "yes" }?, macro.phraseSeq } |

## 4.1.29. <gi>

**<gi>** (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element. [22. Documentation Elements 22.5. Element Specifications]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.phrase.xml |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | The <gi>xhtml:li</gi> element is roughly analogous to the <gi>item</gi> element, as is the <gi scheme="DBK">listItem</gi> element. <br>This example shows the use of both a namespace prefix and the @scheme attribute as alternative ways of indicating that the <gi> in question is not a TEI element name: in practice only one method should be adopted. |
| **Content model** | <content> <dataRef key="teidata.name"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element gi { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, teidata.name } |

## 4.1.30. <graphic>

**<graphic>** indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.media (att.internetMedia (@mimeType)) att.resourced (@url) att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@re (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.graphicLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author date emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** material origDate summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**transcr:** facsimile surface zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc |
| **Note** | The @mimeType attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the @url attribute.<br>Within the body of a text, a<graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or <sourceDoc> element, however, digital representation of some part of the source being encoded. |
| **Example** | `<figure> <graphic url="fig1.png"/> <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head> <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc> </figure>` |
| **Example** | `<facsimile> <surfaceGrp n="leaf1"> <surface> <graphic url="page1.png"/> </surface> <surface> <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/> <graphic url="page2-l </facsimile>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <classRef key="model.descLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element graphic { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.media.attributes, att.resourced.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, model.descLike* }` |

## *4.1.31. <head>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<head>** (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (( @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.headLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list<br>**msdescription:** msDesc<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section. |

**Example**

The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a sectic a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">  <head>In the name of Christ here begins
                                    the first book of the ecclesiastical history of    Georgius
                                    Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>  <div2 type="section">   <head>In the name of Christ here begins
                                    Book I of the history.</head>   <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>   <p>From the Passion of our
                                    Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve
                                          years passed.</p>
                                           <trailer>Here ends
                                    the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and
                                    ninety-six       years from the beginning of the world down
                                    to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>  </div2>
                                    </div1>
```

**Example**

When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can b attribute.

```
<div type="subsection">
                                          <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>  <p>   <lb n="1251"/>
                                           <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et
                                    actus: recipiunt speciem ab obiectis<supplied>.</supplied>   </hi>   <lb n="1252"/>Probatur sic. Omne importans
                                    necessariam habitudinem ad proprium    [...]  </p>
                                    </div>
```

**Example**

The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With
                                    a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all
                                    kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,
                                    argument. <list rend="bulleted">
                                          <head>Connectives</head>  <item>above</item>  <item>accordingly</item>  <item>across from</item>  <item>adjacent to</ite
                                    <!-- ... -->  </item>
                                    </list>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element head
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | lg
    | model.gLike
    | model.phrase
    | model.inter
    | model.lLike
    | model.global
   )*
}
```

## 4.1.32. <idno>

**<idno>** (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [13.3.1. Basic Principles 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

| **Module** | header |
|---|---|

**Attributes**

Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)

**@type** categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.typed |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **identifiant**<br>**pieces** |

**Member of**

model.nameLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

**Contained by**

**core:** addrLine address author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title
**header:** change idno publicationStmt
**linking:** ab
**msdescription:** institution material msIdentifier origDate repository summary surrogates
**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname

**May contain**

**header:** idno
character data

**Note**

<idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for @type on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.

**Example**

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
                                    <idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
                                    <idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno>
                                    <idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno>
                                    <idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno>
                                    <idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
                                    <idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
                                    <idno type="oldCat">  <g ref="#sym"/>345
                                        </idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym.

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="idno"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element idno
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,
   attribute type { "identifiant" | "pieces" }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | idno )*
}
```

## 4.1.33. <institution>

**<institution>** contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript or other object is identified, generally its holding institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <institution>University of Oxford</institution> <repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno> </msIdentifier>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element institution { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.naming.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }` |

## 4.1.34. <item>

**<item>** contains one component of a list. [3.7. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** list |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note p ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi schemaSpec<br>character data |
| **Note** | May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.<br>Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global @n attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. I element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with |
| **Example** | `<list rend="numbered"> <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head> <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item> <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item> <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item> <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item> <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item> <item n="4 </list>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element item<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.sortable.attributes,<br>macro.specialPara<br>} |

## *4.1.35. <lb>*

**<lb>** (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine address author bibl date emph head item list note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 text<br>**transcr:** surface zone |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The @n attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.<br>The @type attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes @break, @ed, or @edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives. |
| **Example** | This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:<br><l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the<br>Fruit</l><br><l>Of that Forbidden<br>Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/><br>mortal tast</l><br><l>Brought Death into the<br>World,<lb ed="1667"/> and<br>all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l> |
| **Example** | This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The @break attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.<br><titlePart> <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed. </titlePart> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><empty/><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element lb
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.edition.attributes,
   att.spanning.attributes,
   att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
```

## *4.1.36. <list>*

**<list>** contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7. Lists]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@type** describes the nature of the items in the list.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **Contenu_Répertoire** **Répertoire**<br>**Note:** Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of @type on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the @rend or @style attributes for these aspects of a list, while using @type for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.<br>The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error. |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc emph head item note p ref title<br>**header:** change revisionDesc sourceDesc<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** summary surrogates<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc head item lb note |
| **Note** | May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings. |
| **Example** | |

```
<list rend="numbered">
                                        <item>a butcher</item>  <item>a baker</item>  <item>a candlestick maker,
                                    with  <list rend="bulleted">    <item>rings on his
                                        fingers</item>
                                           <item>bells on his
                                        toes</item>   </list>  </item>
                                    </list>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | |

```
<list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">
                                         <item>All Cretans
                                    are liars.</item>  <item>Epimenides is a
                                        Cretan.</item>  <item>ERGO Epimenides is a
                                        liar.</item>
                                    </list>
```

**Example**

```
<list type="litany" rend="simple">
                                        <item>God save us
                                    from drought.</item>
                                        <item>God save us
                                    from pestilence.</item>
                                        <item>God save us
                                    from wickedness in high places.</item>  <item>Praise be to God.</item>
                                    </list>
```

**Example**

The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>  <list rend="numbered">   <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no
                                    thief is to be spared who is caught with      the stolen
                                    goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the
                                    goods is] over      eightpence.   <list rend="numbered">
                                            <item n="1.1">And if
                                    anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his
                                             wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a
                                    settlement on that account — or to          clear himself by
                                    an oath of that amount.</item>     <item n="1.2">If,
                                    however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to
                                    escape, he is          not to be spared [whether younger or
                                    older than twelve].</item>     <item n="1.3">If a
                                    thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and
                                    he may          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the
                                    kindred are to stand surety for him          that he will
                                    desist for ever.</item>
                                            <item n="1.4">And if
                                    he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his
                                    wergild,          or to bring him back there.</item>     <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they
                                    are to pay for him with his wergild,          whether to the
                                    king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of
                                    those who          supported him is to pay 120 shillings to
                                    the king as a fine.</item>    </list>   </item>   <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we
                                    pronounced about these lordless men, from whom      no
                                    justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred
                                    to fetch back such a      person to justice and to find him
                                    a lord in public meeting.   <list rend="numbered">
                                            <item n="2.1">And if
                                    they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed
                                    day,          he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he
                                    who encounters him is to strike him          down as a
                                        thief.</item>
                                            <item n="2.2">And he
                                    who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his
                                    wergild          or to clear himself by an oath of that
                                        amount.</item>
                                           </list>   </item>   <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice.
                                    The lord who refuses justice and upholds      his guilty
                                    man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value
                                    of the goods and      120 shillings to the king; and he who
                                    appeals to the king before he demands justice as      often
                                    as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
                                    done, if he had      refused him justice.   <list rend="numbered">     <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory
                                    to a theft by his slave, and it becomes          known about
                                    him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on
                                    the first          occasionp if he does it more often, he is
                                    to be liable to pay all that he owns.</item>     <item n="3.2">And
                                    likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who
                                    has been          an accessory of thieves who have committed
                                    theft, is to liable to the same.</item>    </list>   </item>   <item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we
                                    have pronounced concerning treachery to      a lord, that he
                                    [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it
                                    or is      afterwards convicted at the three-fold
                                        ordeal.</item>  </list>
                                    </div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

**Example**

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope
                                    Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they
                                    confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of
                                    the Holy Cross, and afterwards inscribed with a careful pen
                                    on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the
                                    Holy Cross. <list rend="simple">
                                            <item>I, Eanbald,
                                    by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York,
                                    have      subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of
                                    this document with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</item>   <item>I, Ælfwold, king of
                                    the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed
                                    with      the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>   <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church
                                    of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the      sign of
                                    the Holy Cross.</item>
                                            <item>I, Higbald,
                                    bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed
                                    with the      sign of the Holy Cross.</item>   <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida
                                    Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with thef sign of      the
                                    Holy Cross.</item>
                                            <item>I, Ealdwulf,
                                    bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout
                                        will.</item>   <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop,
                                    have subscribed through delegates.</item>   <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed
                                    with serene mind with the sign of the Holy      Cross.</item>  </list>
                                    </p>
```

**Schematron**

```
                                    <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">
                                    <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss"
                                    list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a
                                    label element followed by an item element</sch:assert>
                                    </sch:rule>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="item"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="headLabel"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="headItem"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="label"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     <elementRef key="item"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element list
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute type { "Contenu_Répertoire" | "Répertoire" }?,
   (
      ( model.divTop | model.global | desc* )*,
      (
         ( item, model.global* )+
       | (
            headLabel?,
            headItem?,
            ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
         )
      ),
      ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
   )
}
```

## *4.1.37. <locus>*

**<locus>** defines a location within a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object typically as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references. [10.3.5. References to Locations within a Manuscri

| **Module** | msdescription |
|---|---|

**Attributes**

Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @ att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

**@from** specifies the starting point of the location in a normalized form, typically a page number.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.word

**@to** specifies the end-point of the location in a normalized form, typically as a page number.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.word

**Member of**

model.pPart.msdesc

**Contained by**

**core:** addrLine author date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title
**header:** change
**linking:** ab
**msdescription:** institution locus material msItemStruct origDate repository summary surrogates
**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname

**May contain**

**msdescription:** locus
character data

**Note**

The @target attribute should only be used to point to elements that contain or indicate a transcription of the locus being described, as in the first example above. To associate a <locus> comparable representation, the global @facs attribute should be used instead, as shown in the second example. Use of the @target attribute to indicate an image is strongly deprecatec indicate one or more image files, as above, or alternatively it may point to one or more appropriate XML elements, such as the <surface>, <zone> element, <graphic>, or <binaryObject> When a single page is being cited, use the @from and @to attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the @from attribute may be used without @to; for exar encoded `<biblScope from="3">p. 3ff<biblScope>`.

**Example**

```
<!-- within ms description
    --><msItem n="1">  <locus target="#F1r
        #F1v #F2r" from="1r"   to="2r">ff.
    1r-2r</locus>  <author>Ben Jonson</author>  <title>Ode to himself</title>  <rubric rend="italics"> An Ode<lb/> to him sel
loathed stage</incipit>
     <explicit>And see
his chariot triumph ore his wayne.</explicit>  <bibl>   <name>Beal</name>, <title>Index 1450-1625</title>, JnB 380</bibl>
</msItem>
<!-- within transcription ...
    -->
<pb xml:id="F1r"/>
<!-- ... -->
<pb xml:id="F1v"/>
<!-- ... -->
<pb xml:id="F2r"/>
<!-- ... -->
```

**Example**

The @facs attribute is available globally when the **transcr** module is included in a schema. It may be used to point directly to an image file, as in the following example:

```
<msItem>  <locus facs="images/08v.jpg images/09r.jpg images/09v.jpg
                       images/10r.jpg
images/10v.jpg">fols. 8v-10v</locus>  <title>Birds Praise of
    Love</title>  <bibl>   <title>IMEV</title>   <biblScope>1506</biblScope>  </bibl>
</msItem>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="hi"/>
  <elementRef key="locus"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | element locus<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>attribute from { text }?,<br>attribute to { text }?,<br>( text \| model.gLike \| hi \| locus )*<br>} |

## 4.1.38. <material>

| | |
|---|---|
| **<material>** contains a word or phrase describing the material of which the object being described is composed. [10.3.2. Material and Object Type] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | The @ref attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of material, defined either internally or externally. |
| **Example** | **<physDesc>** ** ** **<material>**Parchment**</material>** leaves with a **<material>**sharkskin**</material>** binding.** **<br>**</physDesc>** |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element material<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.canonical.attributes,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

## 4.1.39. <moduleRef>

| | |
|---|---|
| **<moduleRef>** (module reference) references a module which is to be incorporated into a schema. [22.2. Modules and Schemas] | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@include** supplies a list of the elements which are to be copied from the specified module into the schema being defined.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 0–∞ occurrences of teidata.xmlName separated by whitespace<br>**@except**<br>**Status** Optional<br>**@key** the name of a TEI module<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.xmlName<br>**@url**<br>**Status** Optional |
| **Member of** | model.oddRef |
| **Contained by** | **tagdocs:** schemaSpec |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | If neither @include nor @exclude is supplied, the effect of this element is to make all the declarations contained by the referenced module available to the schema being compiled. If both attributes are supplied, an ODD processor should signal an error.<br>A TEI module is identified by the name supplied as value for the @ident attribute on a <moduleSpec> element. The @source attribute may be used to specify an online source from which the specification of that module may be read. A URI may alternatively be supplied in the case of a non-TEI module, and this is expected to be written as a RELAX NG schema.<br>If the @uri attribute is used, the <content> element may also be supplied as a child of this element. Its content (which is assumed to be a fragment of RELAX NG code) will be copied along with the content of the resource indicated by the @uri attribute into the target RELAX NG schema. |
| **Example** | `<moduleRef key="linking"/>`<br>This includes all objects available from the linking module. |
| **Example** | `<moduleRef key="linking" except="linkGrp link"/>`<br>This includes all elements available from the linking module except for the <link> and <linkGrp> elements. |
| **Example** | `<moduleRef key="linking" include="linkGrp link"/>`<br>This includes only the <link> and <linkGrp> elements from the linking module. |
| **Schematron** | `<s:rule context="tei:moduleRef"> <s:report test="* and @key">Child elements of <s:name/> are only allowed when an external module is being loaded </s:report> </s:rule>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <elementRef key="content" minOccurs="0"/> </content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | element moduleRef<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>( attribute include { list { * } }? \| attribute except { text }? ),<br>( attribute key { text }? \| attribute url { text }? ),<br>content?<br>} |

## *4.1.40. <msContents>*

**<msContents>** (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript iten

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.msClass (@class) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p textLang<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** msItemStruct summary |
| **Note** | Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary>, <msItem>, or <msItemStruct>. This constraint is not currently enfo |
| **Example** | <msContents class="#sermons"> A collection of Lollard sermons <br></msContents> |
| **Example** | <msContents> <msItem n="1"> <locus>fols. 5r-7v</locus> <title>An ABC</title> <bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>239</biblScope> </bibl> </msIte<br>Scogan</title><br><bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>3747</biblScope> </bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="3"> <locus>fol. 8v</<br>Love</title> <bibl> <title>IMEV</title> <biblScope>1506</biblScope> </bibl> </msItem> <msItem n="5"> <lo<br>with additional losses due to mutilation throughout</note> </msItem><br></msContents> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="textLang" minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="titlePage"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="msItem"/><br><elementRef key="msItemStruct"/><br></alternate><br></sequence><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element msContents<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.msExcerpt.attributes,<br>att.msClass.attributes,<br>(<br>model.pLike+<br>\| ( summary?, textLang?, titlePage?, ( msItem \| msItemStruct )* )<br>)<br>} |

## *4.1.41. <msDesc>*

**<msDesc>** (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object such as early printed books. [10.1. Overview]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declaring (@decls) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @re @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.biblLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** desc emph head item note p ref title<br>**header:** change sourceDesc<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** summary surrogates<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 |
| **May contain** | **core:** head p<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** additional msContents msIdentifier |
| **Note** | Although the <msDesc> has primarily been designed with a view to encoding manuscript descriptions, it may also be used for other objects such as early printed books, fasicles, epigra substantial description. If an object is not text-bearing or the reasons for describing the object is not primarily the textual content, the more general <object> may be more suitable. |
| **Example** | <msDesc> <msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno type="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</idno> </msIdentifi<br>Chaucer</author><br><title>The<br>Canterbury Tales</title><br></msItem> </msContents> <physDesc> <objectDesc> A parchment codex of 136<br>folios, measuring approx 28 by 19 inches, and<br>containing 24 quires. <br> The pages are<br>margined and ruled throughout. Four hands have been identified in the<br>manuscript: the first 44 folios being written in two<br>cursive anglicana scripts, while the remainder is for<br>the most part in a mixed secretary hand. </objectDesc> </physDesc><br></msDesc> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="msIdentifier"/><br><classRef key="model.headLike"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><classRef key="model.pLike"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="msContents"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="physDesc"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="additional"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="msPart" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><elementRef key="msFrag" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></alternate><br></sequence><br></alternate><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element msDesc<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.sortable.attributes,<br>att.declaring.attributes,<br>att.docStatus.attributes,<br>(<br>msIdentifier,<br>model.headLike*,<br>(<br>model.pLike+<br>\| (<br>msContents?,<br>physDesc?,<br>history?,<br>additional?,<br>( msPart* \| msFrag* )<br>)<br>)<br>)<br>} |

## *4.1.42. <msIdentifier>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<msIdentifier>** (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript or similar object being described. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl<br>**msdescription:** msDesc |
| **May contain** | **header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** institution repository<br>**namesdates:** country settlement |
| **Example** | <msIdentifier> <settlement>San Marino</settlement> <repository>Huntington Library</repository><br><idno>MS.E1.26.C.9</idno><br></msIdentifier> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(*[1])='idno' or local-name(*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)='')">An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location.</s:report> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><classRef key="model.placeNamePart"<br>expand="sequenceOptional"/><br><elementRef key="institution"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="repository"<br>minOccurs="0"/><br><elementRef key="collection"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><elementRef key="msName"/><br><elementRef key="objectName"/><br><elementRef key="altIdentifier"/><br></alternate><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element msIdentifier<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>(<br>( country?, settlement?, institution?, repository?, collection*, idno* ),<br>( msName \| objectName \| altIdentifier )*<br>)<br>} |

## *4.1.43. <msItemStruct>*

**<msItemStruct>** (structured manuscript item) contains a structured description for an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.6.1. T

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.msClass (@class) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.l |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msContents msItemStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** author bibl note p respStmt textLang title<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** locus msItemStruct |
| **Example** | <msItemStruct n="2" defective="false" class="#biblComm"> <locus from="24v" to="97v">24v-97v</locus> <author>Apringius de Beja</author> <title type="uniform" xm<br>uiri <lb/> Apringi<br>ep<ex>iscop</ex>i Pacensis<br>eccl<ex>esi</ex>e</rubric> <finalRubric>EXPLIC<ex>IT</ex> EXPO<lb/>SITIO APOCALIPSIS QVA<ex>M</ex> EXPOSVIT DOM<lb/><br></msItemStruct> |

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="locus"/>
   <elementRef key="locusGrp"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="author" minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="respStmt"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="rubric" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="incipit" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="msItemStruct"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="explicit"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="finalRubric"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="colophon"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="decoNote"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="listBibl"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="bibl"/>
     <elementRef key="biblStruct"/>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="filiation"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <classRef key="model.noteLike"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="textLang"
     minOccurs="0"/>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element msItemStruct
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.msExcerpt.attributes,
   att.msClass.attributes,
   (
      ( locus | locusGrp )?,
      (
         model.pLike+
       | (
            author*,
            respStmt*,
            title*,
            rubric?,
            incipit?,
            msItemStruct*,
            explicit?,
            finalRubric?,
            colophon*,
            decoNote*,
            listBibl*,
            ( bibl | biblStruct )*,
            filiation?,
            model.noteLike*,
            textLang?
         )
      )
   )
}
```

## 4.1.44. <note>

**<note>** contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |

**Attributes**

Attributes att.placement (@place) att.written (@hand) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

**@anchored** indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** teidata.truthValue
- **Default** true
- **Note** In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The @anchored attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the @n attribute.

**Member of**

model.noteLike

**Contained by**

**core:** addrLine address author bibl date emph head item list note p pubPlace publisher ref resp respStmt textLang title
**header:** change
**linking:** ab
**msdescription:** institution material msItemStruct origDate repository summary surrogates
**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname
**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 text
**transcr:** surface zone

**May contain**

**core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note p ref title
**header:** idno
**linking:** ab
**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate
**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname
**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi schemaSpec
character data

**Example**

In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

```
And yet it is not only in the great
                                    line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly
                                        <note place="bottom" type="gloss"  resp="#MDMH">  <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the
object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and
creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished
in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
                                        </note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery
has this psychological significance. <!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">  <resp>translation from German to
    English</resp>  <name>Hottinger, Marie
Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

For this example to be valid, the code **MDMH** must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.

**Example**

The global @n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the
                                    matriarch of the family during the second half of the
                                    eleventh century, <note n="126" anchored="true"> The
                                    alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from
                                    1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf.
                                    above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza
                                    documents published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element note
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.placement.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   attribute anchored { text }?,
   macro.specialPara
}
```

## *4.1.45. <orgName>*

**<orgName>** (organization name) contains an organizational name. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.editLike (@instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @ @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @fro (@key, @ref) |

**@full** indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.personal |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **yes**<br>**[Default]** |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine address author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp respStmt textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | |

```
About a year back, a question of
                                considerable interest was agitated in the <orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary">  <placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> A
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | |

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | element orgName<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.global.source.attribute.source,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,<br>att.editLike.attributes,<br>att.canonical.attribute.key,<br>att.canonical.attribute.ref,<br>attribute full { "yes" }?,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

## *4.1.46. <origDate>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<origDate>** (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript, manuscript part, or other object. [10.3.1. Origination] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.dimensions (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.datable.w3c (when, @from, @to) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) |
| **Member of** | model.pPart.msdesc |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<origDate notBefore="-0300"  notAfter="-0200">3rd century BCE</origDate>` |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><textNode/><br><classRef key="model.gLike"/><br><classRef key="model.phrase"/><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br></alternate><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element origDate
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.from,
   att.datable.w3c.attribute.to,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,
   att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,
   att.dimensions.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

## *4.1.47. <p>*

**<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@part** specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.<br>**Derived from** att.fragmentable<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **N** **[Default]** |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note<br>**header:** availability change editorialDecl encodingDesc publicationStmt sourceDesc<br>**msdescription:** msContents msDesc msItemStruct summary surrogates<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | |

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your
                                        axe,</q> she said.
                                        <q>What have you
                                        done?</q>
                                    </p>
                                    <p>  <q>I have now arranged that
                                    you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf. </p>
                                    <p>  <q>Then you must mean that
                                    Thorvald is dead,</q> she
                                    said. </p>
                                    <p>  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think
                                    up some plan for me.</q>
                                    </p>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum \|parent::tei:item \|parent::tei:note \|parent::tei:q \|parent::tei:quote \|parent::tei:remarks \|parent::tei:said \|parent::tei:sp \|parent::tei:stage \|parent::tei:cell \|parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element p { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.declaring.attributes, att.written.attributes, attribute part { "N" }?, macro.paraContent } |

## *4.1.48. <persName>*

**<persName>** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.editLike (@instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.canonical (@key, @ref)<br>**@full** indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.<br>**Derived from** att.personal<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **yes [Default]** |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine address author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp respStmt textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | <persName> <forename>Edward</forename> <forename>George</forename> <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton of <placeName>Knebworth</placeName> </roleName> </persName> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element persName<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.global.source.attribute.source,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,<br>att.editLike.attributes,<br>att.canonical.attribute.key,<br>att.canonical.attribute.ref,<br>attribute full { "yes" }?,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

## *4.1.49. <pubPlace>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<pubPlace>** (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl<br>**header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | <publicationStmt> <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <date>1989</date><br></publicationStmt> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element pubPlace<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.naming.attributes,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

## *4.1.50. <publicationStmt>*

| |
|---|
| **<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date p pubPlace publisher ref<br>**header:** availability idno<br>**linking:** ab |
| **Note** | Where a publication statement contains several members of the **model.publicationStmtPart.agency** or **model.publicationStmtPart.detail** classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order. |
| **Example** | `<publicationStmt> <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher> <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace> <date when="1846"/> </publicationStmt>` |
| **Example** | `<publicationStmt> <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher> <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace> <availability> <p>Available under licence only</p> </availability> <date when="1992">1992</date> </publicationStmt>` |
| **Example** | `<publicationStmt> <publisher>Zea Books</publisher> <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace> <date>2017</date> <availability> <p>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.</p> </availability> <ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/> </publicationStmt>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"> <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/> <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </alternate> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element publicationStmt { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, ( ( model.publicationStmtPart.agency, model.publicationStmtPart.detail* )+ \| model.pLike+ ) }` |

## *4.1.51. <publisher>*

**<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl<br>**header:** publicationStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page |
| **Example** | `<imprint> <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace> <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher> <date>1987</date> </imprint>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element publisher { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.canonical.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }` |

## *4.1.52. <ref>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<ref>** (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.pointing (@target) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.ptrLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change publicationStmt<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | The @target and @cRef attributes are mutually exclusive. |
| **Example** | `See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>` |
| **Example** | `See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term> </ref>.` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element ref { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.pointing.attributes, att.internetMedia.attributes, att.declaring.attributes, att.cReferencing.attributes, macro.paraContent } |

## 4.1.53. <repository>

| | |
|---|---|
| **<repository>** contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts or other objects are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msIdentifier |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | <msIdentifier> <settlement>Oxford</settlement> <institution>University of Oxford</institution> <repository>Bodleian Library</repository> <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno> </msIdentifier> |
| **Content model** | <content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element repository { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.naming.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited } |

## 4.1.54. <resp>

**<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) |
| **Contained by** | **core:** respStmt |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | The attribute @ref, inherited from the class**att.canonical** may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html for bibliographic usage. |
| **Example** | `<respStmt> <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp> <name>Edward Child</name> </respStmt>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | `element resp { att.global.attribute.xmlid, att.global.attribute.n, att.global.attribute.xmllang, att.global.attribute.xmlbase, att.global.attribute.xmlspace, att.global.rendition.attribute.rend, att.global.rendition.attribute.style, att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition, att.global.linking.attribute.corresp, att.global.linking.attribute.synch, att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs, att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf, att.global.linking.attribute.next, att.global.linking.attribute.prev, att.global.linking.attribute.exclude, att.global.linking.attribute.select, att.global.change.attribute.change, att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert, att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp, att.canonical.attributes, att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso, att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso, att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso, att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso, att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso, macro.phraseSeq.limited }` |

## *4.1.55. <respStmt>*

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.respLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl<br>**header:** titleStmt<br>**msdescription:** msItemStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** note resp<br>**namesdates:** orgName persName |
| **Example** | `<respStmt> <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp> <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName> </respStmt>` |
| **Example** | `<respStmt> <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp> <name>Alan Morrison</name> </respStmt>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"<br>minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></alternate><br><elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element respStmt<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.canonical.attributes,<br>(<br>( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) \| ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) ),<br>note*<br>)<br>} |

## *4.1.56. <revisionDesc>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **core:** list<br>**header:** change |
| **Note** | If present on this element, the @status attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list. |
| **Example** | <revisionDesc status="embargoed"> <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change><br></revisionDesc> |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="list"/><br><elementRef key="listChange"/><br><elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></alternate><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element revisionDesc
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.docStatus.attributes,
   ( list | listChange | change+ )
}
```

## *4.1.57. <schemaSpec>*

**<schemaSpec>** (schema specification) generates a TEI-conformant schema and documentation for it. [2.3. The Encoding Description 22.2. Modules and Schemas 23.5.1. Making a Unified ODD]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.namespaceable (@ns) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @sync @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.identified (@ident) att.deprecated (@validUntil)<br>**@start** specifies entry points to the schema, i.e. which patterns may be used as the root of documents conforming to it.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.name separated by whitespace<br>**Default** TEI |
| **Member of** | model.divPart model.encodingDescPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** item note<br>**header:** change encodingDesc<br>**msdescription:** summary surrogates<br>**textstructure:** body div div1 div2 |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc<br>**tagdocs:** classRef classSpec elementSpec moduleRef |
| **Note** | A <schemaSpec> combines references to modules, individual element or macro declarations, and specification groups together to form a unified schema. The processing of the <schem conflicts amongst the declarations it contains or references. Different ODD processors may generate schemas and documentation using different concrete syntaxes.<br>The source may be specified in the form of a private URI, for which the form recommended is `tei:x.y.z`, where `x.y.z` indicates the version number, e.g. `tei:1.5.1` for 1.5.1 release of `tei:current` for whatever is the latest release. The context indicated must provide a set of TEI-conformant specifications in a form directly usable by an ODD processor. By default, this release of the TEI Guidelines. |
| **Example** | `<schemaSpec prefix="TEI_" ident="testsvg" start="TEI svg"> <moduleRef source="tei:current" key="header"/> <moduleRef key="core"/> <moduleRef key="drama"/> <moduleRe </schemaSpec>`<br>This schema combines elements from the current versions of the drama and core modules, the current release version of the header module, and elements from an existing RELAX NG indicated. |
| **Example** | `<schemaSpec ident="Bare-plus" source="tei_bare.compiled.odd" start="TEI"> <moduleRef key="tei"/> <moduleRef key="header"/> <elementRef key="q" source="tei:3.0.0" </schemaSpec>`<br>This schema starts with a pre-existing customization of the TEI called TEI Bare (a customization with a minimal selection of elements). The <q> element is not available in TEI Bare, but we will get the version defined in TEI P5 release 3.0.0 |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br> <alternate minOccurs="0"<br> maxOccurs="unbounded"><br> <classRef key="model.glossLike"/><br> <classRef key="model.descLike"/><br> </alternate><br> <alternate minOccurs="0"<br> maxOccurs="unbounded"><br> <classRef key="model.oddRef"/><br> <classRef key="model.oddDecl"/><br> </alternate><br> </sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element schemaSpec<br>{<br> att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br> att.global.attribute.n,<br> att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br> att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br> att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br> att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br> att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br> att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br> att.global.change.attribute.change,<br> att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br> att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br> att.identified.attribute.ident,<br> att.deprecated.attribute.validUntil,<br> att.namespaceable.attributes,<br> attribute start { list { + } }?,<br> ( ( model.glossLike \| model.descLike )*, ( model.oddRef \| model.oddDecl )* )<br>} |

## *4.1.58. <settlement>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<settlement>** contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [13.2.3. Place Names] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine address author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material msIdentifier origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | <placeName> <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement> <region>Scotland</region><br></placeName> |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | element settlement<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.naming.attributes,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,<br>att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

## *4.1.59. <sourceDesc>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.<br>**Derived from** att.declarable<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.truthValue<br>**Legal values are:** **false [Default]** |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** bibl list p<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** msDesc |
| **Example** | `<sourceDesc> <bibl> <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>. <publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date>. </bibl> </sourceDesc>` |
| **Example** | `<sourceDesc> <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p> </sourceDesc>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br><alternate minOccurs="1"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.biblLike"/><br><classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/><br><classRef key="model.listLike"/><br></alternate><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sourceDesc<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>attribute default { "false" }?,<br>(<br>model.pLike+<br>\| ( model.biblLike \| model.sourceDescPart \| model.listLike )+<br>)<br>} |

## *4.1.60. <summary>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<summary>** contains an overview of the available information concerning some aspect of an item or object (for example, its intellectual content, history, layout, typography etc.) as a complement or alternative to the more detailed information carried by more specific elements. [10.6. Intellectual Content] | |
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** msContents |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note p ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi schemaSpec<br>character data |
| **Example** | **<summary>**This item consists of three books<br>with a prologue and an epilogue. **</summary>** |
| **Example** | **<typeDesc>** **<summary>**Uses a mixture of Roman and Black<br>Letter types.**</summary>**<br>**<typeNote>**Antiqua<br>typeface, showing influence of Jenson's Venetian<br>fonts.**</typeNote>**<br>**<typeNote>**The black<br>letter face is a variant of Schwabacher.**</typeNote>**<br>**</typeDesc>** |
| **Content model** | <content><br><macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | element summary<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>macro.specialPara<br>} |

## *4.1.61. <surface>*

**<surface>** defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from:** att.typed<br>**Status:** Optional<br>**Datatype:** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **GT** **OCR** |
| **Contained by** | **transcr:** facsimile surface zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** desc graphic lb note<br>**transcr:** surface zone |
| **Note** | The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc.<br>The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid @lrx - @ulx units wide and @uly - @lry units high.<br>The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid.<br>Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> element. |
| **Example** | `<facsimile> <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300"> <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/> </surface> </facsimile>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br><classRef key="model.labelLike"/><br><classRef key="model.graphicLike"/><br></alternate><br><sequence minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><elementRef key="zone"/><br><elementRef key="line"/><br><elementRef key="path"/><br><elementRef key="surface"/><br><elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/><br></alternate><br><classRef key="model.global"<br>minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br></sequence><br></sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element surface<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.facs.attribute.facs,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.declaring.attributes,<br>attribute type { "GT" \| "OCR" }?,<br>(<br>( model.global \| model.labelLike \| model.graphicLike )*,<br>( ( zone \| line \| path \| surface \| surfaceGrp ), model.global* )*<br>)<br>} |

## *4.1.62. <surname>*

| | |
|---|---|
| **<surname>** contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [13.2.1. Personal Names] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.canonical (@key, @ref)<br>**@full** indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.<br>**Derived from** att.personal<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **yes** **[Default]** |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine address author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |

| | |
|---|---|
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | element surname<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.canonical.attribute.key,<br>att.canonical.attribute.ref,<br>attribute full { "yes" }?,<br>macro.phraseSeq<br>} |

## *4.1.63. <surrogates>*

**<surrogates>** contains information about any representations of the manuscript or other object being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere. [10.9. Additional Information]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @ att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **msdescription:** additional |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note p ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi schemaSpec<br>character data |
| **Example** | `<surrogates> <bibl> <title type="gmd">diapositive</title> <idno>AM 74 a, fol.</idno> <date>May 1984</date> </bibl> <bibl> <title type="gmd">b/w prints</ti`<br>`</surrogates>` |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Schema Declaration** | element surrogates<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>macro.specialPara<br>} |

## 4.1.64. <teiHeader>

**<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Compo

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyO |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** encodingDesc fileDesc revisionDesc xenoData |
| **Note** | One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document. |
| **Example** | |

```
<teiHeader>  <fileDesc>   <titleStmt>    <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623)
in electronic form</title>    <author>Shakespeare, William
    (1564-1616)</author>
       <respStmt>
        <resp>Originally
prepared by</resp>
        <name>Trevor
    Howard-Hill</name>
       </respStmt>
       <respStmt>
        <resp>Revised and
edited by</resp>
        <name>Christine
    Avern-Carr</name>
       </respStmt>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
       <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>    <address>    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road,
Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>    </address>    <idno type="OTA">119</idno>    <availability>    <p>Freely available on a
    basis.</p>    </availability>    <date when="1968">1968</date>   </publicationStmt>   <sourceDesc>    <bibl>The first
prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,
    1968)</bibl>   </sourceDesc>  </fileDesc>  <encodingDesc>   <projectDesc>    <p>Originally prepared for
use in the production of a series of old-spelling
concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and
revised for use during the        editing of the new Oxford
Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>   </projectDesc>   <editorialDecl>    <correction>    <p>Turned letters are sil
    corrected.</p>
       </correction>
       <normalization>
        <p>Original
spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and
ligatured          forms are not encoded.</p>    </normalization>   </editorialDecl>   <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">    <cRef
        <p>A reference is
created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as
that          listed here: <list>       <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>       </item>       <ite
    CAC</item>    <item>     <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new
    file</item>   </list>  </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="revisionDesc"
   minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element teiHeader
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

## *4.1.65. <text>*

**<text>** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.declaring (@decls) att.written (@hand) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Member of** | model.resource |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **core:** lb note<br>**textstructure:** body |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose. |
| **Example** | `<text> <front> <docTitle> <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart> </docTitle> </front> <body> <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l> <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l> </body> </text>` |
| **Example** | The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:<br>`<text> <front> <!-- front matter for the whole group --> </front> <group> <text> <!-- first text --> </text> <text> <!-- second text --> </text> </group> </text>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"> <elementRef key="front"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"> <elementRef key="body"/> <elementRef key="group"/> </alternate> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"> <elementRef key="back"/> <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/> </sequence> </sequence> </content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element text
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.declaring.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   (
      model.global*,
      ( front, model.global* )?,
      ( body | group ),
      model.global*,
      ( back, model.global* )?
   )
}
```

## 4.1.66. <textLang>

**<textLang>** (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.6.6. Languages and Writing Systems]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@mainLang** (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.language |
| **Member of** | model.biblPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** bibl<br>**msdescription:** msContents msItemStruct |
| **May contain** | **core:** address date emph graphic lb note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global @xml:lang attribute attached to the element containing the description.<br>In all cases, languages should be identified by means of a standardized 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47. Additional documentation for the language may be provided by a <language> element in the TEI header. |
| **Example** | `<textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"> Predominantly in English with Latin glosses</textLang>` |
| **Content model** | `<content> <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element textLang
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   attribute mainLang { text }?,
   macro.phraseSeq
}
```

## *4.1.67. <title>*

**<title>** contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)<br>**@type** classifies the title according to some convenient typology.<br>**Derived from** att.typed<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **genreform**<br>**Note** This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element. |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** addrLine author bibl date desc emph head item note p pubPlace publisher ref resp textLang title<br>**header:** change titleStmt<br>**linking:** ab<br>**msdescription:** institution material msItemStruct origDate repository summary surrogates<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** address bibl date desc emph graphic lb list note ref title<br>**header:** idno<br>**msdescription:** locus material msDesc origDate<br>**namesdates:** country forename orgName persName settlement surname<br>**tagdocs:** att classSpec elementSpec gi<br>character data |
| **Note** | The attributes @key and @ref, inherited from the class **att.canonical** may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title. |
| **Example** | `<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18-21 July 1989</title>` |
| **Example** | `<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>` |
| **Example** | `<title type="full"> <title type="main">Synthèse</title> <title type="sub">an international journal for epistemology, methodology and history of science</title> </title>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br> <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element title<br>{<br> att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br> att.global.attribute.n,<br> att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br> att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br> att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br> att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br> att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br> att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br> att.global.change.attribute.change,<br> att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br> att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br> att.canonical.attributes,<br> att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,<br> att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,<br> att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,<br> att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,<br> att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,<br> attribute type { "genreform" }?,<br> macro.paraContent<br>} |

## 4.1.68. <titleStmt>

**<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** author respStmt title |
| **Example** | <titleStmt> <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John<br>Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title> <respStmt> <resp>compiled by</resp> <name>P.J. Lucas</name> </respStm<br></titleStmt> |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br> <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"<br> maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br> <classRef key="model.respLike"<br> minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/><br> </sequence><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titleStmt<br>{<br> att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br> att.global.attribute.n,<br> att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br> att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br> att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br> att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br> att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br> att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br> att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br> att.global.change.attribute.change,<br> att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br> att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br> ( title+, model.respLike* )<br>} |

## 4.1.69. <valItem>

**<valItem>** documents a single value in a predefined list of values. [22.5.3. Attribute List Specification]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |

**Attributes**

Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, (

**@ident** specifies the value concerned.

**Status** **Required**

**Datatype** teidata.text

**Contained by**

**tagdocs:** valList

**May contain**

**core:** desc

**Example**

```
<valItem ident="dub">  <altIdent xml:lang="fr">dou</altIdent>  <equiv name="unknown"/>  <gloss>dubious</gloss>  <desc>used when the application of this
                                element is doubtful or uncertain</desc>
                                </valItem>
```

**Example**

The <remarks> element is only allowed within <valItem> if the <desc> element is also present:

```
<valList type="closed">  <valItem ident="border">   <desc>used to signify that there is border
                                around a page.</desc>
                                     </valItem>  <valItem ident="border-rule">   <desc>used to signify that
                                there is a border made of ruled lines.</desc>  </valItem>  <valItem ident="border-ornamental">   <desc>used to signify that
                                there is an ornamental border.</desc>  </valItem>  <valItem ident="catch">   <gloss>catchword</gloss>   <desc>for catch word
                                    poetry).</desc>
                                     </valItem>  <valItem ident="listHead">   <gloss>list heading</gloss>   <desc>for headings of lists or similar
                                constructs; often used in tables of contents for the   <q>page</q> heading.</desc>  </valItem>  <valItem ident="pageNum">
                                numbers, but are not sequential or regularly      printed
                                like signatures.</desc>
                                     </valItem>  <valItem ident="sig">   <gloss>signature</gloss>   <desc>for printed signatures.</desc>  </valItem>  <valIt
                                not know.</desc>  </valItem>  <valItem ident="vol">   <gloss>volume number</gloss>   <desc>for printed volume numbers.</desc
                                    values.</desc>
                                      <remarks>    <p>Used for an ornament,
                                decorated tool line, or symbol(s) that is not officially a
                                       delimiter (and thus there is no element on which to
                                put <val>pre()</val> or    <val>post()</val>) but is used to fill
                                space at the bottom of a page so that a    <gi>floatingText</gi> or similar can start
                                at the top of the next.</p>   </remarks>  </valItem>
                                </valList>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.glossLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.descLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <sequence minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.glossLike"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    <classRef key="model.descLike"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <elementRef key="remarks" minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <elementRef key="paramList" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="1"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schema Declaration** | |

```
element valItem
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.deprecated.attribute.validUntil,
   attribute ident { text },
   (
      model.glossLike*,
      ( model.descLike+, ( model.glossLike, model.descLike* )*, remarks* )?,
      paramList?
   )
}
```

## 4.1.70. <valList>

**<valList>** (value list) contains one or more <valItem> elements defining possible values. [22.5.3. Attribute List Specification]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @ att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.deprecated (@validUntil) |

**@mode** specifies the effect of this declaration on its parent object.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.combinable |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **add**<br>**[Default]** |

**@type** specifies the extensibility of the list of values specified.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated |
| **Legal values are:** | **closed** |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Contained by** | **tagdocs:** attDef elementSpec |
| **May contain** | **tagdocs:** valItem |
| **Example** | |

```
<valList type="closed">  <valItem ident="req">   <gloss>required</gloss>  </valItem>  <valItem ident="rec">   <gloss>recommended</gloss>  </valItem>  <valItem ident=
                                </valList>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="valItem" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element valList
{
   att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   att.global.attribute.n,
   att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   att.global.change.attribute.change,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   att.deprecated.attribute.validUntil,
   attribute mode { "add" }?,
   attribute type { "closed" }?,
   valItem*
}
```

## *4.1.71. <xenoData>*

**<xenoData>** (non-TEI metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed. [2.5. Non-TEI Metadata]

**Module** header

**Attributes** Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyO

**@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Derived from** | att.declarable |
| **Status** | Optional |
| **Datatype** | teidata.truthValue |
| **Legal values are:** | **false**<br>**[Default]** |

**Member of** model.teiHeaderPart

**Contained by** **header:** teiHeader

**May contain** ANY

**Example** This example presumes that the prefix dc has been bound to the namespace http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/ and the prefix rdf is bound to the namespace http://www.w3.c
any kind of relative URI may be used, including fragment identifiers (see [[undefined SG-id]]). Do note, however, that if the contents of the <xenoData> block are to be extracted and

```
<xenoData
                                                    xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"
                                                    xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#">
                                                  <rdf:RDF>   <rdf:Description rdf:about="http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/606621663">
                                                    <dc:title>The
                                                description of a new world, called the blazing-world</dc:title>    <dc:creator>The Duchess of
                                                    Newcastle</dc:creator>    <dc:date>1667</dc:date>    <dc:identifier>British Library,
                                                    8407.h.10</dc:identifier>    <dc:subject>utopian fiction</dc:subject>   </rdf:Description>  </rdf:RDF>
                                                </xenoData>
                                                <xenoData>  <rdf:RDF>   <rdf:Description rdf:about="">    <dc:title>The Description
                                                of a New World, Called the Blazing-World, 1668</dc:title>    <dc:creator>Cavendish,
                                                Margaret (Lucas), Duchess of Newcastle</dc:creator>    <dc:publisher>Women Writers Project</dc:publisher>    <dc:date>2002
                                                    fiction</dc:subject>
                                                      </rdf:Description>
                                                    </rdf:RDF>
                                                </xenoData>
```

**Example** In this example, the prefix rdf is bound to the namespace http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#, the prefix dc is bound to the namespace http://purl.org/dc/eleme

```
<xenoData
                                                    xmlns:cc="http://web.resource.org/cc/"
                                                    xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#"
                                                    xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/">
                                                  <rdf:RDF>   <cc:Work rdf:about="">    <dc:title>Applied Software Project
                                                Management - review</dc:title>    <dc:type rdf:resource="http://purl.org/dc/dcmitype/Text"/>
                                                    <dc:license rdf:resource="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/uk/"/>
                                                  </cc:Work>   <cc:License rdf:about="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/uk/">
                                                    <cc:permits rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Reproduction"/>
                                                    <cc:permits rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Distribution"/>
                                                    <cc:requires rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Notice"/>
                                                    <cc:requires rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Attribution"/>
                                                    <cc:permits rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/DerivativeWorks"/>
                                                    <cc:requires rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/ShareAlike"/>
                                                  </cc:License>
                                                </rdf:RDF>
                                                </xenoData>
```

**Example** In this example, the prefix dc is again bound to the namespace http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/, and the prefix oai_dc is bound to the namespace http://www.o

```
<xenoData
                                                    xmlns:oai_dc="http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/"
                                                    xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/">
                                                  <oai_dc:dc>   <dc:title>The colonial
                                                despatches of Vancouver Island and British      Columbia
                                                1846-1871: 11566, CO 60/2, p. 291; received 13 November,
                                                    Trevelyan to Merivale (Permanent Under-Secretary)</dc:title>   <dc:date>1858-11-12</dc:date>   <dc:creator>Trevelyan<
                                                Victoria Humanities Computing and Media      Centre, and
                                                UVic Libraries</dc:publisher>   <dc:type>InteractiveResource</dc:type>   <dc:format>application/xhtml+xml</dc:format>   <d
                                                licensed under a Creative Commons …</dc:rights>   <dc:language>(SCHEME=ISO639) en</dc:language>   <dc:source>Transcribed f
                                                microfilm and/or original documents, and      marked up in
                                                TEI P5 XML. The interactive XHTML resource is generated
                                                from the XHTML using XQuery and XSLT.</dc:source>   <dc:source>repository: CO</dc:source>   <dc:source>coNumber:
                                                    60</dc:source>
                                                      <dc:source>coVol:
                                                    2</dc:source>   <dc:source>page: 291</dc:source>   <dc:source>coRegistration:
                                                    11566</dc:source>
                                                      <dc:source>received: received 13 November</dc:source>   <dc:subject>Trevelyan, Sir
                                                Charles Edward</dc:subject>   <dc:subject>Merivale, Herman</dc:subject>   <dc:subject>Elliot, T.
                                                    Frederick</dc:subject>   <dc:subject>Moody, Colonel Richard
                                                    Clement</dc:subject>
                                                      <dc:subject>Lytton,
                                                Sir Edward George Earle Bulwer</dc:subject>   <dc:subject>Jadis, Vane</dc:subject>   <dc:subject>Carnarvon,
                                                    Earl</dc:subject>
                                                      <dc:subject>British
                                                    Columbia</dc:subject>
                                                      <dc:description>British Columbia
                                                correspondence: Public Offices      document (normally
                                                correspondence between government      departments)</dc:description>  </oai_dc:dc>
                                                </xenoData>
```

**Example** In this example, the prefix mods is bound to the namespace http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3.

```
<xenoData
                                                    xmlns:mods="http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3">
                                                  <mods:mods>   <mods:titleInfo>    <mods:title>Academic
                                                adaptation and cross-cultural        learning experiences of
                                                Chinese students at American        universities</mods:title>    <mods:subTitle>a narrative
                                                    inquiry</mods:subTitle>   </mods:titleInfo>   <mods:name type="personal"    authority="local">    <mods:namePart/>
                                                    University</mods:affiliation>    <mods:namePart type="given">Hong</mods:namePart>    <mods:namePart type="family">Zha
                                                      <mods:genre>doctoral theses</mods:genre>   <mods:originInfo>    <mods:place>    <mods:placeTerm type="text">Boston
                                                    (Mass.)</mods:placeTerm>    </mods:place>    <mods:publisher>Northeastern
                                                    University</mods:publisher>    <mods:copyrightDate encoding="w3cdtf"    keyDate="yes">2013</mods:copyrightDate>   </
                                                      <mods:form authority="marcform">electronic</mods:form>    <mods:digitalOrigin>born
                                                    digital</mods:digitalOrigin>   </mods:physicalDescription>
                                                <!-- ... -->  </mods:mods>
                                                </xenoData>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"><br><textNode/><br><anyElement/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element xenoData<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.facs.attribute.facs,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>attribute default { "false" }?,<br>( text \| anyElement-xenoData )<br>} |

## *4.1.72. <zone>*

**<zone>** defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.coordinated (@ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points) att.written (@hand) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)<br>**@type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.<br>**Derived from** att.typed<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:** **Polygon** **PrintSpace** **String** **TextBlock** **TextLine**<br>**@rotate** indicates the amount by which this zone has been rotated clockwise, with respect to the normal orientation of the parent <surface> element as implied by the dimensions given in the <msDesc> element or by the coordinates of the <surface> itself. The orientation is expressed in arc degrees.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.count<br>**Default** 0 |
| **Member of** | model.linePart |
| **Contained by** | **transcr:** surface zone |
| **May contain** | **core:** graphic lb note<br>**transcr:** surface zone<br>character data |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface.<br>A graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone.<br>A zone may be of any shape. The attribute@points may be used to define a polygonal zone, using the coordinate system defined by its parent surface.<br>A zone is always a closed polygon. Repeating the initial coordinate at the end of the sequence is optional. To encode an unclosed path, use the <path> element. |
| **Example** | <surface ulx="14.54" uly="16.14" lrx="0" lry="0"> <graphic url="stone.jpg"/> <zone points="4.6,6.3 5.25,5.85 6.2,6.6 8.19222,7.4125 9.89222,6.5875 10.9422,6.1375 11.4422,6.7125 8.21722,8.3125 6.2,7.65"/> </surface><br>This example defines a non-rectangular zone: see the illustration in section [[undefined PH-surfzone]]. |
| **Example** | <facsimile> <surface ulx="50" uly="20" lrx="400" lry="280"> <zone ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="500" lry="321"> <graphic url="graphic.png "/> </zone> </surface> </facsimile><br>This example defines a zone which has been defined as larger than its parent surface in order to match the dimensions of the graphic it contains. |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><textNode/><br><classRef key="model.gLike"/><br><classRef key="model.graphicLike"/><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br><elementRef key="surface"/><br><classRef key="model.linePart"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element zone<br>{<br>att.global.attribute.xmlid,<br>att.global.attribute.n,<br>att.global.attribute.xmllang,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlbase,<br>att.global.attribute.xmlspace,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.style,<br>att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.synch,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.next,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.prev,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,<br>att.global.linking.attribute.select,<br>att.global.change.attribute.change,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,<br>att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,<br>att.coordinated.attributes,<br>att.written.attributes,<br>attribute type<br>{<br>"Polygon" \| "PrintSpace" \| "String" \| "TextBlock" \| "TextLine"<br>}?,<br>attribute rotate { text }?,<br>(<br>text<br>\| model.gLike<br>\| model.graphicLike<br>\| model.global<br>\| surface<br>\| model.linePart<br>)*<br>} |

# 4.2. Model classes

## *4.2.1. model.addrPart*

| | |
|---|---|
| **model.addrPart** groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address |
| **Members** | model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno] addrLine |

## *4.2.2. model.addressLike*

| | |
|---|---|
| **model.addressLike** groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1. The TEI Infrastructure] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | address |

## *4.2.3. model.biblLike*

| | |
|---|---|
| **model.biblLike** groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References] | |
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Used by** | model.inter sourceDesc |
| **Members** | bibl msDesc |

### 4.2.4. model.biblPart

| **model.biblPart** groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl |
| **Members** | model.imprintPart[pubPlace publisher] model.respLike[author respStmt] availability bibl msIdentifier textLang |

### 4.2.5. model.common

| **model.common** groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div div1 div2 |
| **Members** | model.divPart[model.lLike model.pLike[ab p] schemaSpec] model.entryLike model.inter[model.biblLike[bibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc] model.listLike[list] model.oddDecl[classSpec elementSpec] model.qLike[model.quoteLike] model.stageLike] |
| **Note** | This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions. |

### 4.2.6. model.dateLike

| **model.dateLike** groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | date |

### 4.2.7. model.descLike

| **model.descLike** groups elements which contain a description of their function. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | attDef classSpec elementSpec graphic schemaSpec valItem |
| **Members** | desc |

### 4.2.8. model.div1Like

| **model.div1Like** groups top-level structural divisions. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body |
| **Members** | div1 |

### 4.2.9. model.div2Like

| **model.div2Like** groups second-level structural divisions. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | div1 |
| **Members** | div2 |

### 4.2.10. model.divBottom

| **model.divBottom** groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div div1 div2 list |
| **Members** | model.divBottomPart model.divWrapper |

### 4.2.11. model.divLike

| **model.divLike** groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Used by** | body div |
| **Members** | div |

### 4.2.12. model.divPart

| **model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.lLike model.pLike[ab p] schemaSpec |
| **Note** | Note that this element class does not include members of the **model.inter** class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items. |

### 4.2.13. model.divTop

| **model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body div div1 div2 list |
| **Members** | model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head]] model.divWrapper |

### 4.2.14. model.divTopPart

| **model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divTop |
| **Members** | model.headLike[head] |

### 4.2.15. model.emphLike

| **model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | emph title |

### 4.2.16. model.encodingDescPart

| **model.encodingDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | encodingDesc |
| **Members** | editorialDecl schemaSpec |

### 4.2.17. model.global

| **model.global** groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | address bibl body date div div1 div2 head list macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara origDate surface text zone |
| **Members** | model.global.edit model.global.meta model.milestoneLike[lb] model.noteLike[note] |

### 4.2.18. model.graphicLike

| **model.graphicLike** groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | facsimile model.phrase surface zone |
| **Members** | graphic |

### 4.2.19. model.headLike

| **model.headLike** groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Used by** | model.divTopPart msDesc |
| **Members** | head |

### 4.2.20. model.highlighted

| **model.highlighted** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.emphLike[emph title] model.hiLike |

### 4.2.21. model.imprintPart

| **model.imprintPart** groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.11. Bibliographic Citations and References] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.biblPart |
| **Members** | pubPlace publisher |

### 4.2.22. model.inter

| **model.inter** groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | head macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.biblLike[bibl msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike[desc] model.listLike[list] model.oddDecl[classSpec elementSpec] model.qLike[model.quoteLike] model.stageLike |

### 4.2.23. model.labelLike

| **model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.inter surface |
| **Members** | desc |

### 4.2.24. model.limitedPhrase

| **model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited |
| **Members** | model.emphLike[emph title] model.hiLike model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno]] model.pPart.editorial model.pPart.msdesc[locus material origDate] model.phrase.xml[att gi] model.ptrLike[ref] |

### 4.2.25. model.linePart

| **model.linePart** groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a <sourceDoc> element. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | zone |
| **Members** | model.hiLike zone |

### 4.2.26. model.listLike

| **model.listLike** groups list-like elements. [3.7. Lists] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.inter sourceDesc |
| **Members** | list |

### 4.2.27. model.milestoneLike

| **model.milestoneLike** groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.10.3. Milestone Elements] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Used by** | model.global |
| **Members** | lb |

### 4.2.28. model.nameLike

| **model.nameLike** groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.addrPart model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno |
| **Note** | A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc. |

### 4.2.29. model.nameLike.agent

| **model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike respStmt |
| **Members** | orgName persName |
| **Note** | This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations. |

### 4.2.30. model.noteLike

| **model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global msItemStruct |
| **Members** | note |

### 4.2.31. model.oddDecl

| **model.oddDecl** groups elements which generate declarations in some markup language in ODD documents. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.inter schemaSpec |
| **Members** | classSpec elementSpec |

### 4.2.32. model.oddRef

| **model.oddRef** groups elements which reference declarations in some markup language in ODD documents. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | schemaSpec |
| **Members** | classRef moduleRef |

### 4.2.33. model.pLike

| **model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | availability editorialDecl encodingDesc model.divPart msContents msDesc msItemStruct publicationStmt sourceDesc |
| **Members** | ab p |

### 4.2.34. model.pPart.data

| **model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno] |

### 4.2.35. model.pPart.edit

| **model.pPart.edit** groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes] |
|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.pPart.editorial model.pPart.transcriptional |

### 4.2.36. model.pPart.msdesc

| **model.pPart.msdesc** groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description. [10. Manuscript Description] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | locus material origDate |

### 4.2.37. model.persNamePart

| **model.persNamePart** groups elements which form part of a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | forename surname |

### 4.2.38. model.phrase

| **model.phrase** groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | date head macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara origDate |
| **Members** | model.graphicLike[graphic] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[emph title] model.hiLike] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date] model.measureLike model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName] model.offsetLike model.persNamePart[forename surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement]] idno]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial model.pPart.transcriptional] model.pPart.msdesc[locus material origDate] model.phrase.xml[att gi] model.ptrLike[ref] model.ptrLike.form model.segLike model.specDescLike |
| **Note** | This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc. |

### 4.2.39. model.phrase.xml

| **model.phrase.xml** groups phrase-level elements used to encode XML constructs such as element names, attribute names, and attribute values [22. Documentation Elements] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | att gi |

### 4.2.40. model.placeNamePart

| **model.placeNamePart** groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3. Place Names] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.placeStateLike msIdentifier |
| **Members** | country settlement |

### 4.2.41. model.placeStateLike

| **model.placeStateLike** groups elements which describe changing states of a place. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | model.placeNamePart[country settlement] |

### 4.2.42. model.ptrLike

| **model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail |
| **Members** | ref |

### 4.2.43. model.publicationStmtPart.agency

| **model.publicationStmtPart.agency** groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | publisher |
| **Note** | The 'agency' child elements, while not required, are required if one of the 'detail' child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a 'detail' child element without a preceding 'agency' child element.<br>See also **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**. |

### *4.2.44. model.publicationStmtPart.detail*

| **model.publicationStmtPart.detail** groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | model.ptrLike[ref] address availability date idno pubPlace |
| **Note** | A 'detail' child element may not occur unless an 'agency' child element precedes it.<br>See also **model.publicationStmtPart.agency**. |

### *4.2.45. model.qLike*

| **model.qLike** groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.phraseSeq model.inter |
| **Members** | model.quoteLike |

### *4.2.46. model.resource*

| **model.resource** groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | TEI |
| **Members** | facsimile text |

### *4.2.47. model.respLike*

| **model.respLike** groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.biblPart titleStmt |
| **Members** | author respStmt |

### *4.2.48. model.teiHeaderPart*

| **model.teiHeaderPart** groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teiHeader |
| **Members** | encodingDesc xenoData |

## 4.3. Attribute classes

### *4.3.1. att.ascribed*

| **att.ascribed** provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. Quotation 8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | change |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@who** indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace<br>In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the @who attribute.<br>`<castItem type="role">  <role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>`<br>`</castItem>`<br>`<castItem type="role">`<br>`<role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>  <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>`<br>`</castItem>`<br>`<!-- ... -->`<br>`<sp who="#Barnardo">  <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>  <l n="1">Who's there?</l>`<br>`</sp>`<br>`<sp who="#Francisco">  <speaker>Francisco</speaker>  <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, unfold yourself.</l>`<br>`</sp>`<br>**Note** For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element. |

## 4.3.2. att.breaking

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.breaking** provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | lb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@break** indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.<br>**Status** Recommended<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Sample values include** **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace<br>**no** the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace<br>**maybe** the encoding does not take any position on this issue.<br>In the following lines from the"Dream of the Rood", linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *lāðost* and *reord-berendum*.<br>`<ab> ...ꝑesa tome iu icꝑæs ȝeꝑorden`<br>`ꝑita heardoſt . leodum la<lb break="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes ꝑeȝ rihtne ȝerymde reord be<lb break="no"/> rendum hꝑæt me`<br>`þaȝeꝑeorðode ꝑuldres ealdor ofer... </ab>` |

## 4.3.3. att.cReferencing

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.cReferencing** provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ref |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@cRef** (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.text<br>**Note** The value of @cRef should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.<br>The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the @decls attribute.<br>Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element. |

## 4.3.4. att.canonical

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.canonical** provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.naming[att.personal[forename orgName persName surname] author country institution pubPlace repository settlement] date material publisher resp respStmt title |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@key** provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.text<br>`<author> <name key="name 427308" type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</name> </author>`<br>`<author> <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)" ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name> </author>`<br>**Note** The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.<br>No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the @key attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a @ref attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.<br>**@ref** (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace<br>`<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338" type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>`<br>**Note** The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities. |

## 4.3.5. att.combinable

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.combinable** provides attributes indicating how multiple references to the same object in a schema should be combined | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Members** | att.identified[attDef classSpec elementSpec schemaSpec] valItem valList |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.deprecated (@validUntil)<br>**@mode** specifies the effect of this declaration on its parent object.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.enumerated<br>**Legal values are:**<br>**add**<br>this declaration is added to the current definitions**[Default]**<br>**delete**<br>if present already, the whole of the declaration for this object is removed from the current setup<br>**change**<br>this declaration changes the declaration of the same name in the current definition<br>**replace**<br>this declaration replaces the declaration of the same name in the current definition |
| **Note** | An ODD processor should handle the values for @mode as follows:<br>**add**<br>the object should be created (processing any children in add mode); raise an error if an object with the same identifier already exists<br>**replace**<br>use this object in preference to any existing object with the same identifier, and ignore any children of that object; process any new children in replace mode<br>**delete**<br>do not process this object or any existing object with the same identifier; raise an error if any new children supplied<br>**change**<br>process this object, and process its children, and those of any existing object with the same identifier, in change mode |

## *4.3.6. att.coordinated*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.coordinated** provides attributes which can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system. | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Members** | surface zone |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@ulx** gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.numeric<br>**@uly** gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.numeric<br>**@lrx** gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.numeric<br>**@lry** gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.numeric<br>**@points** identifies a two dimensional area by means of a series of pairs of numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 3–∞ occurrences of teidata.point separated by whitespace |

## *4.3.7. att.datable.custom*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.datable.custom** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.3.7. Dates and Times] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Members** | att.datable[change country date idno orgName origDate persName resp settlement title] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@when-custom** supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace<br>The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system<br>`<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the <date when="1040-03-06" when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH </date>.</p> <p>The current world will end at the <date when="2012-12-21" when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak 13</date>.</p> <p>The Battle of Meggidu (<date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</date>).</p> <p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub <date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</date> </p>`<br>Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents.The @when-custom attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats. |

## 4.3.8. att.datable.iso

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.datable.iso** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Members** | att.datable[change country date idno orgName origDate persName resp settlement title] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@when-iso** supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso<br>The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.<br>`<date when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date> <date when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date> <time when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time> <time when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time> <date when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</date> <time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time> <time when-iso="14">around two</time> <time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>`<br>All of the examples of the @when attribute in the **att.datable.w3c** class are also valid with respect to this attribute.<br>`He likes to be punctual. I said <q> <time when-iso="12">around noon</time> </q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.`<br>The second occurence of <time> could have been encoded with the @when attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. The first occurence could not.<br>**@notBefore-iso** specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso<br>**@notAfter-iso** specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso<br>**@from-iso** indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso<br>**@to-iso** indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.iso |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.<br>If both @when-iso and @dur-iso are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,<br>`<date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/>`<br>indicates the same time period as<br>`<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>`<br>In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading. |

## 4.3.9. att.datable.w3c

**att.datable.w3c** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 13.3.7. Dates and Times]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.datable[change country date idno orgName origDate persName resp settlement title] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@when** supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c<br>Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.<br>`<p> <date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date> <date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date> <time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 1999 at 8 pm</time> <time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time> <date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date> <date when="--06-12">June 12th</date> month</date> <date when="--08">August</date> <date when="2006">MMVI</date> <date when="0056">A </p>`<br>`This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="#julian" when="1632-06 style)</date>.`<br>`<opener> <dateline> <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName> <date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date> </dateline> <sal Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time> </opener>`<br>**@from** indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c<br>**@to** indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c |
| **Schematron** | `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore\|@notAfter\|@from\|@to" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>` |
| **Schematron** | `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>` |
| **Schematron** | `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>` |
| **Example** | `<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar.<br>The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used.<br>Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used. |

## 4.3.10. att.declaring

**att.declaring** provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ab body div div1 div2 facsimile graphic msDesc p ref surface text |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@decls** identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. |

## 4.3.11. att.deprecated

**att.deprecated** provides attributes indicating how a deprecated feature will be treated in future releases.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Members** | att.combinable[att.identified[attDef classSpec elementSpec schemaSpec] valItem valList] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@validUntil** provides a date before which the construct being defined will not be removed.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** date<br>**Schematron**<br>`<sch:rule context="tei:*[@validUntil]"> <sch:let name="advance_warning_period" value="current-date() + xs:dayTimeDuration('P60D')"/> <sch:let name="me_phrase" value="if (@ident) then concat('The ', @ident ) else concat('This ', local-name(.), ' of ', ancestor::tei:*[@ident][1]/@ident )"/> <sch:assert test="@validUntil cast as xs:date ge current-date()"> <sch:value-of select=" concat( $me_phrase, ' construct is outdated (as of ', @validUntil, '); ODD processors may ignore it, and its use is no longer supported' )"/> </sch:assert> <sch:assert role="nonfatal" test="@validUntil cast as xs:date ge $advance_warning_period"> <sch:value-of select="concat( $me_phrase, ' construct becomes outdated on ', @validUntil )"/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule>`<br>**Schematron**<br>`<sch:rule context="tei:*[@validUntil][ not( self::valDesc \| self::valList \| self::defaultVal )]"> <sch:assert test="child::tei:desc[ @type eq 'deprecationInfo']"> A deprecated construct should include, whenever possible, an explanation, but this <sch:value-of select="name(.)"/> does not have a child <desc type="deprecationInfo"></sch:assert> </sch:rule>`<br>**Note** The value of this attribute should represent a date (in standard `yyyy-mm-dd` format) which is later than the date on which the attribute is added to an ODD. Technically, this attribute asserts only the intent to leave a construct in future releases of the markup language being defined up to at least the specified date, and makes no assertion about what happens past that date. In practice, the expectation is that the construct will be removed from future releases of the markup language being defined sometime shortly after the @validUntil date.<br>An ODD processor will typically not process a specification element which has a @validUntil date that is in the past. An ODD processor will typically warn users about constructs which have a @validUntil date that is in the future. E.g., the documentation for such a construct might include the phrase *warning: deprecated* in red. |

## 4.3.12. att.dimensions

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | date origDate |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence) |

## 4.3.13. att.docStatus

**att.docStatus** provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | bibl change msDesc revisionDesc schemaSpec |
| **Attributes** | Attributes |

**@status** describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

**Sample values include:**

**approved**
**candidate**
**cleared**
**deprecated**
**draft [Default]**
**embargoed**
**expired**
**frozen**
**galley**
**proposed**
**published**
**recommendation**
**submitted**
**unfinished**
**withdrawn**

**Example**

```
<revisionDesc status="published">  <change when="2010-10-21"   status="published"/>  <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>  <change when="2010-08-02"   status=
                                   </revisionDesc>
```

## 4.3.14. att.editLike

**att.editLike** provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 10.3.1. Origination 13.3.2. The Person Element 11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | date orgName origDate persName |
| **Attributes** | Attributes |

**@instant** indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.xTruthValue

**Default** false

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.<br>Each pointer on the @source (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned. |

## 4.3.15. att.edition

**att.edition** provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Members** | lb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes |

**@ed** (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

**@edRef** (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at th

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Example**

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the
                                    Fruit</l>
                                <l>Of that Forbidden
                                Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/>
                                mortal tast</l>
                                <l>Brought Death into the
                                    World,<lb ed="1667"/> and
                                    all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>
```

**Example**

```
<listBibl>  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">   <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,  <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date>  </bibl>  <
                                </listBibl>
                                <!-- ... -->
                                <p>Looking into the
                                future aeons from the supreme moment of the cosmos, I saw
                                the populations still with all their strength maintaining
                                    the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of
                                their ancient culture, still living their personal lives in
                                zest and endless novelty of action, … I saw myself still
                                preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
                                    con-<pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</p>
```

## 4.3.16. att.fragmentable

**att.fragmentable** provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.divLike[div div1 div2] ab p |
| **Attributes** | Attributes |

**@part** specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.enumerated

**Legal values are:**

**Y**
(yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect

**N**
(no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness**[Default]**

**I**
(initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

**M**
(medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

**F**
(final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

**Note** The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

## 4.3.17. att.global.change

**att.global.change** supplies the @change attribute, allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Members** | att.global[TEI ab additional addrLine address att attDef attList author availability bibl body change classRef classSpec country date desc div div1 div2 editorialDecl elementSpec emph encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc forename gi graphic head idno institution item lb list locus material moduleRef msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note orgName origDate p persName pubPlace publicationStmt publisher ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc schemaSpec settlement sourceDesc summary surface surname surrogates teiHeader text textLang title titleStmt valItem valList xenoData zone] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@change** points to one or more <change> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace |

### 4.3.18. att.global.facs

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.global.facs** provides an attribute used to express correspondence between an element containing transcribed text and all or part of an image representing that text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles] | |
| **Module** | transcr |
| **Members** | att.global[TEI ab additional addrLine address att attDef attList author availability bibl body change classRef classSpec country date desc div div1 div2 editorialDecl elementSpec emph encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc forename gi graphic head idno institution item lb list locus material moduleRef msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note orgName origDate p persName pubPlace publicationStmt publisher ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc schemaSpec settlement sourceDesc summary surface surname surrogates teiHeader text textLang title titleStmt valItem valList xenoData zone] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@facs** (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace |

### 4.3.19. att.global.linking

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.global.linking** provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Members** | att.global[TEI ab additional addrLine address att attDef attList author availability bibl body change classRef classSpec country date desc div div1 div2 editorialDecl elementSpec emph encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc forename gi graphic head idno institution item lb list locus material moduleRef msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note orgName origDate p persName pubPlace publicationStmt publisher ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc schemaSpec settlement sourceDesc summary surface surname surrogates teiHeader text textLang title titleStmt valItem valList xenoData zone] |

**Attributes**

Attributes

**@corresp** (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<group>  <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"   xml:lang="mi">   <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">    <div type="chapter">     <head>He
Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i
nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>     <p>…</p>    </div>   </body>  </text>  <text xml:
regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native
Lands, 1876.</head>     <p>…</p>    </div>   </body>  </text>
</group>
```

In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using @corresp. The language is indicated using @xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the @corresp and the tag pointed to by the @corresp inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```
<!-- In a placeography
called "places.xml" --><place xml:id="LOND1"  corresp="people.xml#LOND2
people.xml#GENI1">  <placeName>London</placeName>  <desc>The city of
London...</desc>
</place>
<!-- In a literary
personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"  corresp="places.xml#LOND1
#GENI1">  <persName type="lit">London</persName>  <note>   <p>Allegorical character
representing the city of <placeName ref="places.xml#LOND1">London</placeName>.</p>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"  corresp="places.xml#LOND1
#LOND2">  <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>  <note>   <p>Personificati
London's genius. Appears as an      allegorical
character in mayoral shows.   </p>  </note>
</person>
```

In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

**@synch** (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**@sameAs** points to an element that is the same as the current element.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.pointer

**@copyOf** points to an element of which the current element is a copy.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.pointer

**Note** Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.

**@next** points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.pointer

**Note** It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

**@prev** (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.pointer

**Note** It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

**@exclude** points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**@select** selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Note** This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

## *4.3.20. att.global.rendition*

**att.global.rendition** provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

**Module** tei

**Members** att.global[TEI ab additional addrLine address att attDef attList author availability bibl body change classRef classSpec country date desc div div1 div2 editorialDecl elementSpec emph encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc forename gi graphic head idno institution item lb list locus material moduleRef msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note orgName origDate p persName pubPlace publicationStmt publisher ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc schemaSpec settlement sourceDesc summary surface surname surrogates teiHeader text textLang title titleStmt valItem valList xenoData zone]

**Attributes**

Attributes

**@rend** (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
                                                    <lb/>To The
                                                <lb/>Duchesse
                                                <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/>  <hi rend="case(mixed)">New
                                                Blazing-World</hi>. </head>
```

**Note** These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the @rend attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the @rend attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

**@style** contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.text

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant:
                                                small-caps">  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/>  <
                                                Blazing-World</hi>. </head>
```

**Note** Unlike the attribute values of @rend, which uses whitespace as a separator, the @style attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.
The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the <styleDefDecl> element in the TEI header.
If @style and @rendition are both present on an element, then @style overrides or complements @rendition. @style should not be used in conjunction with @rend, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language.

**@rendition** points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On Her <lb/>  <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-W
                                                <!-- elsewhere...
                                                -->
                                                <rendition xml:id="sc"  scheme="css">font-variant:
                                                small-caps</rendition>
                                                <rendition xml:id="normal"  scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition>
                                                <rendition xml:id="ac"  scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition>
```

**Note** The @rendition attribute is used in a very similar way to the @class attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.
If @rendition is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with @rend. Where both @rendition and @rend are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.
Each URI provided should indicate a <rendition> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the @scheme attribute.

## *4.3.21. att.global.responsibility*

**att.global.responsibility** provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.4. Simple Editorial Changes 11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations 13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

**Module** tei

**Members** att.global[TEI ab additional addrLine address att attDef attList author availability bibl body change classRef classSpec country date desc div div1 div2 editorialDecl elementSpec emph encodingDesc facsimile fileDesc forename gi graphic head idno institution item lb list locus material moduleRef msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note orgName origDate p persName pubPlace publicationStmt publisher ref repository resp respStmt revisionDesc schemaSpec settlement sourceDesc summary surface surname surrogates teiHeader text textLang title titleStmt valItem valList xenoData zone]

**Attributes**

Attributes

**@cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** teidata.probCert

**@resp** (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
- **Note** To reduce the ambiguity of a @resp pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that @resp be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

**Example**

```
Blessed are the <choice>  <sic>cheesemakers</sic>  <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>
                                    </choice>: for they shall
                                    be called the children of God.
```

**Example**

```
                                    <!-- in the <text> ...
                                        --><lg>
                                    <!-- ... -->  <l>Punkes, Panders, bafe
                                    extortionizing    sla<choice>    <sic>n</sic>    <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr>   </choice>es,</l>
                                    <!-- ... -->
                                    </lg>
                                    <!-- in the <teiHeader> ...
                                        -->
                                    <!-- ... -->
                                    <respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">  <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>  <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>
                                    </respStmt>
```

## 4.3.22. att.global.source

**att.global.source** provides an attribute used by elements to point to an external source. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

**Module** tei

**Members** att.global[TEI ab additional addrLine address att attDef attList author availability bibl body change classRef classSpec country date desc div div1 div2 editorialDecl elementSpec emph encd head idno institution item lb list locus material moduleRef msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItemStruct note orgName origDate p persName pubPlace publicationStmt publisher ref repos settlement sourceDesc summary surface surname surrogates teiHeader text textLang title titleStmt valItem valList xenoData zone]

**Attributes**

Attributes

**@source** specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.

- **Status** Optional
- **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
- **Note** The @source attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as <schemaSpec> or declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.
  On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.
  In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI t documented in a <prefixDef>.
  If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources

**Example**

```
<p>
                                    <!-- ... --> As Willard
                                    McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">‘Collaboration’ is a
                                    problematic and should be a contested    term.</quote>
                                    <!-- ... -->
                                    </p>
```

**Example**

```
<p>
                                    <!-- ... -->  <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical
                                    theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the    less we
                                    seem to know.</quote>
                                    <!-- ... -->
                                    </p>
                                    <!-- ... -->
                                    <bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">  <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>, <edition>15th edition</edition>. <pubPlac
                                    Chicago Press</publisher>
                                        (<date>2003</date>), <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>. </bibl>
```

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | <elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/><br>Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release. |
| **Example** | <schemaSpec ident="myODD" source="mycompiledODD.xml"><br><!-- further declarations<br>specifying the components required --><br></schemaSpec><br>Create a schema using components taken from the file **mycompiledODD.xml**. |

## 4.3.23. att.internetMedia

**att.internetMedia** provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.media[graphic] ref |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@mimeType** (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace |
| **Example** | In this example @mimeType is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.<br><ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guideli |
| **Note** | This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single ta supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The @mimeType attribute must have a value taken from this list. |

## 4.3.24. att.media

**att.media** provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | graphic |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.internetMedia (@mimeType) |

## 4.3.25. att.msClass

**att.msClass** provides an attribute to indicate text type or classification. [10.6. Intellectual Content 10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Members** | msContents msItemStruct |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@class** identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace |

## 4.3.26. att.msExcerpt

**att.msExcerpt** (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [10.6. Intellectual Content]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | msdescription |
| **Members** | msContents msItemStruct |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@defective** indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.xTruthValue |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole. |

### *4.3.27. att.namespaceable*

| **att.namespaceable** provides an attribute indicating the target namespace for an object being created | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Members** | elementSpec schemaSpec |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@ns** (namespace) specifies the namespace to which this element belongs<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.namespace<br>**Default** http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 |

### *4.3.28. att.naming*

| **att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. Referring Strings 13.3.6. Names and Nyms] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.personal[forename orgName persName surname] author country institution pubPlace repository settlement |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref) |

### *4.3.29. att.placement*

| **att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions 11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions] | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | head note |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes |

**@place** specifies where this item is placed.

**Status** Recommended

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

**Suggested values include:**

**below**
below the line

**bottom**
at the foot of the page

**margin**
in the margin (left, right, or both)

**top**
at the top of the page

**opposite**
on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

**overleaf**
on the other side of the leaf

**above**
above the line

**end**
at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

**inline**
within the body of the text.

**inspace**
in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in
                                                the margin]</add>
                                                <add place="bottom
                                                opposite">[An addition written at
                                                the foot of the current page and also on the
                                                facing page]</add>
```

```
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

## 4.3.30. att.pointing

**att.pointing** provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References]

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | locus note ref |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@target** specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace<br>**Note** One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`. |

## 4.3.31. att.ranging

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.ranging** provides attributes for describing numerical ranges. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.dimensions[date origDate] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@atLeast** gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.numeric<br>**@atMost** gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.numeric<br>**@min** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.numeric<br>**@max** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.numeric<br>**@confidence** specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by @min and @max, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.probability |
| **Example** | `The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike"> <gap reason="illegible" extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/> </del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.` |

## 4.3.32. att.repeatable

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.repeatable** supplies attributes for the elements which define component parts of a content model. | |
| **Module** | tagdocs |
| **Members** | classRef |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@minOccurs** (minimum number of occurences) indicates the smallest number of times this component may occur.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.count<br>**Default** 1<br>**@maxOccurs** (maximum number of occurences) indicates the largest number of times this component may occur.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.unboundedInt<br>**Default** 1 |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="*[ @minOccurs and @maxOccurs ]"> <sch:let name="min" value="@minOccurs cast as xs:integer"/> <sch:let name="max" value="if ( normalize-space( @maxOccurs ) eq 'unbounded') then -1 else @maxOccurs cast as xs:integer"/> <sch:assert test="$max eq -1 or $max ge $min">@maxOccurs should be greater than or equal to @minOccurs</sch:assert> </sch:rule> <sch:rule context="*[ @minOccurs and not( @maxOccurs ) ]"> <sch:assert test="@minOccurs cast as xs:integer lt 2">When @maxOccurs is not specified, @minOccurs must be 0 or 1</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Note** | The value of @minOccurs must always be less than or equal to that of @maxOccurs. Since the default value of @maxOccurs is 1, when @maxOccurs is not specified @minOccurs must always be less than or equal to 1. The default value of @minOccurs is also 1, and therefore, when@minOccurs is not specified the value of @maxOccurs must always be greater than or equal to 1. An ODD processor should raise an error if either of these conditions is not met. |

## 4.3.33. att.resourced

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.resourced** provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | graphic |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@url** (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.<br>**Status** **Required**<br>**Datatype** teidata.pointer |

## 4.3.34. att.sortable

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.sortable** provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | bibl idno item list msDesc |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@sortKey** supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.word<br><pre>David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES"> <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohe ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term> </index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first cousin.</pre><br>**Note** The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under 'fourth', and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under 'maccoy', while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location. |

## 4.3.35. att.spanning

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.spanning** provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions 1.3.1. Attribute Classes] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | lb |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@spanTo** indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.pointer<br>**Schematron** The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element<br><sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]"> <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the @spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself. |

### *4.3.36. att.translatable*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.translatable** provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | desc |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@versionDate** specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.temporal.w3c<br>**Note** The @versionDate attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the @versionDate value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made. |

### *4.3.37. att.written*

| | |
|---|---|
| **att.written** provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ab div head note p text zone |
| **Attributes** | Attributes<br>**@hand** points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.<br>**Status** Optional<br>**Datatype** teidata.pointer |

## 4.4. Macros

### *4.4.1. macro.limitedContent*

| | |
|---|---|
| **macro.limitedContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | desc |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><textNode/><br><classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/><br><classRef key="model.inter"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | macro.limitedContent = ( text \| model.limitedPhrase \| model.inter )* |

### *4.4.2. macro.paraContent*

| | |
|---|---|
| **macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | ab emph p ref title |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate minOccurs="0"<br>maxOccurs="unbounded"><br><textNode/><br><classRef key="model.gLike"/><br><classRef key="model.phrase"/><br><classRef key="model.inter"/><br><classRef key="model.global"/><br><elementRef key="lg"/><br><classRef key="model.lLike"/><br></alternate><br></content> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Declaration** | <pre>macro.paraContent =<br>   (<br>      text<br>    \| model.gLike<br>    \| model.phrase<br>    \| model.inter<br>    \| model.global<br>    \| lg<br>    \| model.lLike<br>   )*</pre> |

## 4.4.3. macro.phraseSeq

| | |
|---|---|
| **macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | addrLine author country forename material orgName persName pubPlace publisher settlement surname textLang |
| **Content model** | <pre><content><br> <alternate minOccurs="0"<br>  maxOccurs="unbounded"><br>  <textNode/><br>  <classRef key="model.gLike"/><br>  <classRef key="model.qLike"/><br>  <classRef key="model.phrase"/><br>  <classRef key="model.global"/><br> </alternate><br></content></pre> |
| **Declaration** | <pre>macro.phraseSeq =<br>   ( text \| model.gLike \| model.qLike \| model.phrase \| model.global )*</pre> |

## 4.4.4. macro.phraseSeq.limited

| | |
|---|---|
| **macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | institution repository resp |
| **Content model** | <pre><content><br> <alternate minOccurs="0"<br>  maxOccurs="unbounded"><br>  <textNode/><br>  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/><br>  <classRef key="model.global"/><br> </alternate><br></content></pre> |
| **Declaration** | <pre>macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text \| model.limitedPhrase \| model.global )*</pre> |

## 4.4.5. macro.specialPara

| | |
|---|---|
| **macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | change item note summary surrogates |
| **Content model** | <pre><content><br> <alternate minOccurs="0"<br>  maxOccurs="unbounded"><br>  <textNode/><br>  <classRef key="model.gLike"/><br>  <classRef key="model.phrase"/><br>  <classRef key="model.inter"/><br>  <classRef key="model.divPart"/><br>  <classRef key="model.global"/><br> </alternate><br></content></pre> |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Declaration** | `macro.specialPara = ( text \| model.gLike \| model.phrase \| model.inter \| model.divPart \| model.global )*` |

## 4.5. Datatypes

### *4.5.1. teidata.certainty*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCert |
| **Content model** | `<content> <valList type="closed"> <valItem ident="high"/> <valItem ident="medium"/> <valItem ident="low"/> <valItem ident="unknown"/> </valList> </content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.certainty = "high" \| "medium" \| "low" \| "unknown"` |
| **Note** | Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. |

### *4.5.2. teidata.count*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• zone/@rotate |
| **Content model** | `<content> <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger` |
| **Note** | Any positive integer value or zero is permitted |

### *4.5.3. teidata.duration.iso*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content> <dataRef name="token" restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }` |
| **Example** | `<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Example** | `<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>` |
| **Example** | `<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>` |
| **Example** | `<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>` |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either `.` or `,` as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.<br>For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*. |

## 4.5.4. teidata.duration.w3c

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content> <dataRef name="duration"/> </content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration` |
| **Example** | `<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>` |
| **Example** | `<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>` |
| **Example** | `<date dur="P7D">a week</date>` |
| **Example** | `<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>` |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the `S` number, which may have a decimal component (using `.` as the decimal point). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.<br>For complete details, see the W3C specification. |

## 4.5.5. teidata.enumerated

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities. | |
| **Module** | tei |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• ab/@part<br>• attDef/@mode<br>• availability/@status<br>• classSpec/@mode<br>• classSpec/@type<br>• div/@org<br>• div/@sample<br>• div/@part<br>• div/@type<br>• div1/@type<br>• div2/@type<br>• elementSpec/@mode<br>• forename/@full<br>• idno/@type<br>• list/@type<br>• orgName/@full<br>• p/@part<br>• persName/@full<br>• surface/@type<br>• surname/@full<br>• title/@type<br>• valList/@mode<br>• valList/@type<br>• zone/@type |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef key="teidata.word"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.enumerated = teidata.word` |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element. |

## *4.5.6. teidata.language*

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• textLang/@mainLang |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <alternate>`<br>`  <dataRef name="language"/>`<br>`  <valList>`<br>`  <valItem ident=""/>`<br>`  </valList>`<br>` </alternate>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.language = xsd:language \| ( "" )` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | The values for this attribute are language 'tags' as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.<br>A 'language tag', per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.<br>**language**<br>The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.<br>**script**<br>The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.<br>**region**<br>Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm.<br>**variant**<br>An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.<br>**extension**<br>An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.<br>**private use**<br>An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with `x-`) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.<br>There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been 'grandfathered' from previous specifications.<br>Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with `x-`, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.<br>Examples include<br>**sn**<br>Shona<br>**zh-TW**<br>Taiwanese<br>**zh-Hant-HK**<br>Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong<br>**en-SL**<br>English as spoken in Sierra Leone<br>**pl**<br>Polish<br>**es-MX**<br>Spanish as spoken in Mexico<br>**es-419**<br>Spanish as spoken in Latin America<br>The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML. |

## 4.5.7. teidata.name

| **teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | att gi Element:<br>• schemaSpec/@start |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<dataRef name="Name"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.name = xsd:Name` |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. |

## 4.5.8. teidata.namespace

| **teidata.namespace** defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>`<dataRef name="anyURI"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI` |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax* |

## 4.5.9. teidata.numeric

| **teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate><br><dataRef name="double"/><br><dataRef name="token"<br>restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/><br><dataRef name="decimal"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.numeric =<br>xsd:double \| token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } \| xsd:decimal |
| **Note** | Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.<br>To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, 'E notation', a variant of 'exponential notation', may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.<br>A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2. |

## 4.5.10. teidata.pattern

| **teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br><dataRef name="token"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.pattern = token |
| **Note** | A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern `H(ä\|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä\|ae?)ndel` *matches* each of the three strings)<br>Wikipedia<br>This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema. |

## 4.5.11. teidata.point

| **teidata.point** defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br><dataRef name="token"<br>restriction="(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.point = token { pattern = "(-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?,-?[0-9]+(\.[0-9]+)?)" } |
| **Example** | <facsimile> <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280"><br><zone points="220,100<br>300,210 170,250 123,234"> <graphic url="handwriting.png "/> </zone> </surface><br></facsimile> |
| **Note** | A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not. |

## 4.5.12. teidata.pointer

| **teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br><dataRef name="anyURI"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/% is encoded as https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25 while http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/ is encoded as http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/ |

## 4.5.13. teidata.probCert

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate><br><dataRef key="teidata.probability"/><br><dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.probCert = teidata.probability \| teidata.certainty |

## 4.5.14. teidata.probability

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCert |
| **Content model** | <content><br><dataRef name="double"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.probability = xsd:double |
| **Note** | Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*. |

## 4.5.15. teidata.replacement

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br><textNode/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.replacement = text |

## 4.5.16. teidata.temporal.iso

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times.* | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Content model** | <content><br> <alternate><br> <dataRef name="date"/><br> <dataRef name="gYear"/><br> <dataRef name="gMonth"/><br> <dataRef name="gDay"/><br> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/><br> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/><br> <dataRef name="time"/><br> <dataRef name="dateTime"/><br> <dataRef name="token"<br> restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/><br> </alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.temporal.iso =<br> xsd:date<br> \| xsd:gYear<br> \| xsd:gMonth<br> \| xsd:gDay<br> \| xsd:gYearMonth<br> \| xsd:gMonthDay<br> \| xsd:time<br> \| xsd:dateTime<br> \| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.<br>For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.<br>While ISO 8601 permits the use of both `00:00` and `24:00` to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of `24:00`. |

## *4.5.17. teidata.temporal.w3c*

**teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <alternate><br> <dataRef name="date"/><br> <dataRef name="gYear"/><br> <dataRef name="gMonth"/><br> <dataRef name="gDay"/><br> <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/><br> <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/><br> <dataRef name="time"/><br> <dataRef name="dateTime"/><br> </alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.temporal.w3c =<br> xsd:date<br> \| xsd:gYear<br> \| xsd:gMonth<br> \| xsd:gDay<br> \| xsd:gYearMonth<br> \| xsd:gMonthDay<br> \| xsd:time<br> \| xsd:dateTime |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. |

## *4.5.18. teidata.text*

**teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• valItem/@ident |
| **Content model** | <content><br> <dataRef name="string"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.text = string |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted. |

### 4.5.19. teidata.truthValue

| **teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• availability/@default<br>• bibl/@default<br>• editorialDecl/@default<br>• note/@anchored<br>• sourceDesc/@default<br>• xenoData/@default |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef name="boolean"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean` |
| **Note** | The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.<br>This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: **data.xTruthValue**. |

### 4.5.20. teidata.unboundedInt

| **teidata.unboundedInt** defines an attribute value which can be either any non-negative integer or the string "unbounded". | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content>  <alternate>`<br>`  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>`<br>`  <valList type="closed">`<br>`  <valItem ident="unbounded"/>`<br>`  </valList>`<br>` </alternate>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.unboundedInt = xsd:nonNegativeInteger \| ( "unbounded" )` |

### 4.5.21. teidata.versionNumber

| **teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef name="token"`<br>`  restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.versionNumber =`<br>`  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }` |

### 4.5.22. teidata.word

| **teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token. | |
|---|---|
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.enumerated Element:<br>• locus/@from<br>• locus/@to |
| **Content model** | `<content>`<br>` <dataRef name="token"`<br>`  restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/>`<br>`</content>` |
| **Declaration** | `teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" }` |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. |

### 4.5.23. teidata.xTruthValue

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br><alternate><br><dataRef name="boolean"/><br><valList><br><valItem ident="unknown"/><br><valItem ident="inapplicable"/><br></valList><br></alternate><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean \| ( "unknown" \| "inapplicable" ) |
| **Note** | In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype **data.TruthValue**. |

### 4.5.24. teidata.xmlName

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.xmlName** defines attribute values which contain an XML name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:<br>• classRef/@key<br>• moduleRef/@include<br>• moduleRef/@key |
| **Content model** | <content><br><dataRef name="NCName"/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName |
| **Note** | The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification. |

### 4.5.25. teidata.xpath

| | |
|---|---|
| **teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | |
| **Content model** | <content><br><textNode/><br></content> |
| **Declaration** | teidata.xpath = text |
| **Note** | Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in [[undefined XSLT2]].<br>When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP. |



Lucas Terriel, stagiaire Almanach-INRIA dans le cadre du master TNAH de l'Ecole nationale des chartes. Date: 2020-08-25